Statistics for geoscientists

Pieter Vermeesch

Department of Earth Sciences
University College London

p.vermeesch@ucl.ac.uk

Contents

Chapter 1

Introduction

According to the Oxford dictionary of English, the definition of 'statistics' is:

> *The practice or science of collecting and analysing numerical data in large quantities, especially for the purpose of **inferring** proportions in a whole from those in a representative **sample**.*

The words 'inferring' and 'sample' are written in bold face because they are really central to the practice and purpose of Science in general, and Geology as a whole. For example:

1. The true proportion of quartz grains in a sand deposit is *unknown* but can be *estimated* by counting a number of grains from a representative sample.

2. The true crystallisation age of a rock is unknown but can be estimated by measuring the ^{206}Pb/^{238}U-ratio in a representative number of U-bearing mineral grains from that rock.

3. The true ^{206}Pb/^{238}U-ratio of a U-bearing mineral is unknown but can be estimated by repeatedly measuring the ratio of ^{206}Pb- and ^{238}U- ions extracted from that mineral in a mass spectrometer.

4. The spatial distribution of arsenic in groundwater is unknown but can be estimated by measuring the arsenic content of a finite number of water wells.

Thus, pretty much everything that we do as Earth Scientists involves statistics in one way or another. We need statistics to plot, summarise, average, interpolate and extrapolate data; to quantify the precision of quantitative inferences; to fit analytical models to our measurements; to classify data and to extract patterns from it.

The field of statistics is as vast as it is deep and it is simply impossible to cover all its aspects in a single text. These notes are meant as a basic statistical 'survival guide' for geoscientists, which may be used as a starting point for further study. There exist dozens of statistics textbooks that could be used for this purpose. Two books that I have consulted whilst writing these notes are "Mathematical Statistics and Data Analysis" by John A. Rice (Duxbury Press), which provides an in-depth introduction to general statistics; and "Statistics and Data Analysis in Geology" by John C. Davis (Wiley), which presents an excellent if very detailed introduction to geoscience-specific statistics.

Useful though a basic understanding of statistics may be, it is only when this understanding is combined with some programming skills that it becomes truly *useful*. These notes take a hands-on approach, using a popular statistical programming language called `R`. To make life

easier and lower the barrier to using the statistical methods described herein, a large number of datasets and predefined `R` functions have been bundled in an accompanying `R`-package called `geostats`. To demonstrate the versatility of `R`, all the 189 figures in these notes were made with `R`, without involving any other graphics software. Most of these figures can be reproduced using the `geostats` package.

These notes begin by introducing the basic principles of general statistics, before moving on to 'geological' data. Their main purpose is to instill a critical attitude in the student, and to raise an awareness of the many pitfalls of blindly applying statistical 'black boxes' to geological problems. For example, Chapters 2 and 3 introduce basic notions of exploratory data analysis using plots and summary statistics. Right from the start, they will show that geological data, such as sedimentary clast sizes or reservoir porosity measurements, cannot readily be analysed using these techniques without some simple pre-treatment.

Chapters 4, 5 and 6 introduce the basic principles of probability theory, and uses these to derive two classical examples of discrete probability distributions, namely the binomial and Poisson distributions. These two distributions are used as a vehicle to introduce the important concepts of parameter estimation, hypothesis tests and confidence intervals. Here the text goes into considerably more detail than it does elsewhere. In a departure from many other introductory texts, Section 5.1 briefly introduces the method of maximum likelihood. This topic is revisited again in Sections 6.2, 7.4, 8.4 and 10.3. Even though few geoscientists may use maximum likelihood theory themselves, it is nevertheless useful that they are aware of its main principles, because these principles underlie many common statistical tools.

Chapter 7 discusses the normal or Gaussian distribution. It begins with an empirical demonstration of the central limit theorem in one and two dimensions. This demonstration serves as an explanation of "what is so normal about the Gaussian distribution?". This is an important question because much of the remainder of the notes (including Chapters 11, 14 and 15) point out that many geological datasets are *not* normal. Ignoring this non-normality can lead to biased and sometimes nonsensical results.

Scientists use measurements to make quantitative inferences about the world. Random sampling fluctuations can have a significant effect on these inferences, and it is important that these are evaluated before drawing any scientific conclusions. In fact, it may be argued that estimating the precision of a quantitative inference is as important as the inference itself. Chapter 8 uses basic calculus to derive some generic error propagation formulas. These formulas are useful regardless of whether one is able to derive them or not. The error propagation chapter points out a strong dependency of statistical precision on sample size.

This sample size dependency is further explored in Chapter 9, which introduces a number of statistical tests to compare one dataset with a theoretical distribution, or to compare two datasets with each other. Useful though these tests are in principle, in practice their outcome should be treated with caution. Here we revisit an important caveat that is also discussed in Section 5.5, namely that the *power* of statistical tests to detect even the tiniest violation of a null hypothesis, monotonically increases with sample size. This is the reason why statistical hypothesis tests have come under increasing scrutiny in recent years. Chapter 9 advocates that, rather than testing whether a hypothesis is true or false, it is much more productive to quantify 'how false' said hypothesis is.

Chapter 10 introduces linear regression using the method of least squares. But whereas most introductory statistics texts only use least squares, these notes also demonstrate the mathematical equivalence of least squares with the method of maximum likelihood using normal residuals. The advantage of this approach is that it facilitates the derivation of confidence intervals and prediction intervals for linear fits, using the error propagation methods of Chapter 8. The method of maximum likelihood also provides a natural route towards more advanced weighted regression algorithms that account for correlated uncertainties in both variables (Section 10.5).

Chapter 11 covers the subjects of fractals and chaos. These topics may seem a bit esoteric at first glance, but do play a key role in the geosciences. We will see that the scale invariance of many geological processes gives rise to data that cannot be captured by conventional probability distributions. Earthquake magnitudes, fracture networks and the grain size distribution of glacial till are just three examples of quantities that follow power law distributions, which do not have a well defined mean. In the briefest of introductions to the fascinating world of deterministic chaos, Section 11.4 uses a simple magnetic pendulum example to introduce the 'butterfly effect', which describes the phenomenon whereby even simple systems of nonlinear equations can give rise to unpredictable and highly complex behaviour.

Chapters 12 and 13 introduce some simple algorithms for unsupervised and supervised machine learning, respectively. As the name suggests, unsupervised learning helps scientists visualise and analyse large datasets without requiring any prior knowledge of their underlying structure. It includes multivariate ordination techniques such as Principal Component Analysis (PCA, Section 12.1) and Multidimensional Scaling (MDS, Section 12.2); as well as the k-means (Section 12.3) and hierarchical (Section 12.4) clustering algorithms. Supervised learning algorithms such as discriminant analysis (Section 13.1) and decision trees (Section 13.2) define decision rules to identify pre-defined groups in some training data. These rules can then be used to assign a dataset of new samples to one of these same groups.

Chapter 14 discusses compositional data, which are one of the most common data types in the Earth Sciences. Chemical compositions and the relative abundances of minerals, isotopes and animal species are all strictly positive quantities that can be renormalised to a constant sum. They cannot be safely analysed by statistical methods that assume normal distributions. Even the simplest statistical operations such as the calculation of an arithmetic mean or a standard deviation can go horribly wrong when applied to compositional data. Fortunately, the compositional data conundrum can be solved using a simple data transformation using logratios (Section 14.2). Following logratio transformation, compositional datasets can be safely averaged or analysed by more sophisticated statistical methods.

Directional data such as compass bearings and geographical coordinates are another type of measurement that is probably more common in the Earth Sciences than in any other discipline. Chapter 15 shows that, like the compositional data of Chapter 14, also directional data cannot be safely analysed with 'normal statistics'. For example, the arithmetic mean of two angles 1° and 359° is 180°, which is clearly a nonsensical result. Chapter 15 introduces the vector sum as a better way to average directional data, both in one dimension (i.e., a circle, Sections 15.1–15.2) and two dimensions (i.e., a sphere, Sections 15.3–15.4).

The spatial dimension is crucially important for the Earth Sciences. *Geostatistics* is a subfield of statistics that specifically deals with this dimension. Chapter 16 provides a basic introduction to kriging interpolation, which is a widely used method to create topographical and

compositional maps from a set of sparsely distributed measurements. This chapter concludes the theoretical half of these notes. The remainder of the text (Chapters 17–19) is dedicated to practical exercises.

Chapter 17 provides an extensive introduction to the `R` programming language. It comprises 16 sections, one for each preceding chapter, and reproduces most of the examples that were covered in the first half of the text. Fortunately, several statistical procedures that are quite complicated to do manually, turn out to be really simple in `R`. For example, the binomial hypothesis test of Section 5.2 involves seven different manual steps, or one simple `R` command called `binom.test`. And the Poisson test of Section 6.3 is implemented in an equally simple function called `poisson.test`.

Despite this simplicity, learning `R` does present the reader with a steep learning curve. The only way to climb this curve is to practice. One way to do so is to solve the exercises in Chapter 18. Like the `R` tutorials of Chapter 17, these exercises are also grouped in 16 sections, one for each of the 16 theory chapters. Most of the exercises can be solved with `R`, using the functions provided in Chapter 17. Fully worked solutions are provided in Chapter 19, which again comprises 16 sections.

The source code of the `geostats` package and of these notes are provided on GitHub at https://github.com/pvermees/geostats/. Should you find a mistake in the text or a bug in the software, then you can correct them there and issue a pull request. Or alternatively, you can simply drop me an email. Thanks in advance for your help!

<div align="right">

Pieter Vermeesch
University College London
22 December 2020

</div>

Chapter 2

Plotting data

A picture says more than a thousand words and nowhere is this more true than in statistics. So before we explore the more quantitative aspects of data analysis, it is useful to *visualise* the data. Consider, for example, the following four bivariate datasets (Anscombe's quartet[1]):

I		II		III		IV	
x	y	x	y	x	y	x	y
10.0	8.04	10.0	9.14	10.0	7.46	8.0	6.58
8.0	6.95	8.0	8.14	8.0	6.77	8.0	5.76
13.0	7.58	13.0	8.74	13.0	12.74	8.0	7.71
9.0	8.81	9.0	8.77	9.0	7.11	8.0	8.84
11.0	8.33	11.0	9.26	11.0	7.81	8.0	8.47
14.0	9.96	14.0	8.10	14.0	8.84	8.0	7.04
6.0	7.24	6.0	6.13	6.0	6.08	8.0	5.25
4.0	4.26	4.0	3.10	4.0	5.39	19.0	12.50
12.0	10.84	12.0	9.13	12.0	8.15	8.0	5.56
7.0	4.82	7.0	7.26	7.0	6.42	8.0	7.91
5.0	5.68	5.0	4.74	5.0	5.73	8.0	6.89

Table 2.1: Anscombe's quartet of bivariate data pairs.

For all four datasets (I – IV):

– the mean (see chapter 3) of x is 9

– the variance (see chapter 3) of x is 11

– the mean of y is 7.50

– the variance of y is 4.125

– the correlation coefficient (see chapter 10) between x and y is 0.816

– the best fit line (see chapter 10) is given by $y = 3.00 + 0.500x$

So from a numerical point of view, it would appear that all four datasets are identical. However, when we visualise the data as bivariate scatter plots, they turn out to be very different:

---

[1]Anscombe, F.J., 1973. Graphs in statistical analysis. *The American statistician*, 27(1), pp.17-21.
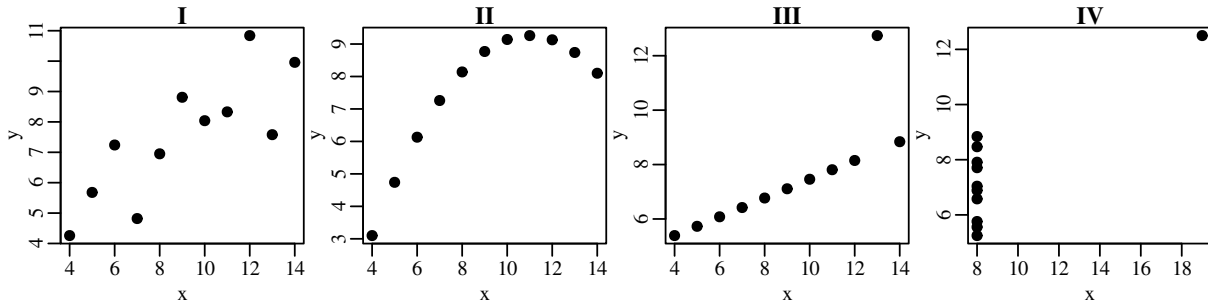
Figure 2.1: Anscombe's quartet shown as bivariate scatter plots.

Bivariate scatter plots are just one way to visualise analytical data. Many other graphical devices exist, each of which is appropriate for a particular type of data. The following sections of this chapter will introduce a number of these data types, and the associated plots.

2.1   Categorical data

Categorical data take one of a limited number of values, assigning each 'object' to a particular class or category. Geological examples of categorical data are:

– rock types in a mapping area;

– animal species in a bone bed;

– the modal composition of a thin section.

Consider, for example, the following 41 clast counts:

granite	basalt	gneiss	quartzite
10	5	6	20

A bar chart is the natural way to visualise these data:
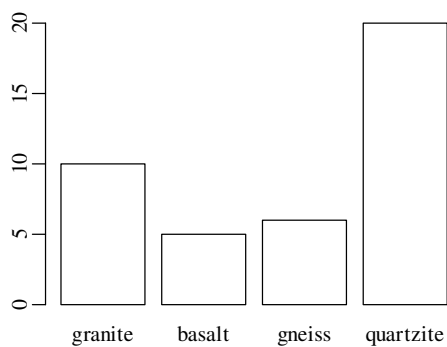
Figure 2.2: Bar chart of clast counts. The vertical axis labels the number of objects counted in each category. The order of the categories along the horizontal axis is completely arbitrary and can be changed without loss of information.

2.2   Count data

Count data are closely related to categorical data. Geological examples of this type of data include:

– the annual number of earthquakes that exceed a certain magnitude;

– the number of gold chips found in a panning session;

– the number of dry wells in a wildcat drilling survey.

The crucial difference between count data and categorical data is that the order of the categories matters for the count data, whereas it does not for categorical data. As an example, consider the number of earthquakes of magnitude 5.0 or greater between 1917 and 2016:

Figure 2.3: Histogram of magnitude $\geq$ 5.0 earthquakes per year between 1917 and 2016. The vertical axis labels the number of years. The horizontal axis shows the number of earthquakes. In contrast with Figure 2.2, the order of the four categories along the horizontal axis matters and cannot be changed without loss of information. Categorical data whose order matters are also known as *ordinal* data.

2.3 Continuous data

Not all geological or geophysical measurements take integer values. Many are free to take on any decimal value. A few examples of such continuous data are:

– the magnitude of earthquakes;

– the spontaneous electrical potential between geological strata;

– the density of minerals;

– the porosity of a sedimentary rock.

Consider the following dataset of pH measurements in 20 samples of rain water:

6.2, 4.4, 5.6, 5.2, 4.5, 5.4, 4.8, 5.9, 3.9, 3.8, 5.1, 4.1, 5.1, 5.5, 5.1, 4.6, 5.7, 4.6, 4.6, 5.6

These values can be collected into bins and plotted as a histogram, just like the count data in section 2.2. However this binning exercise poses two practical problems.

i. How many bins should we use, and how wide should they be?

The number of bins strongly affects the appearance of a histogram:

Figure 2.4: Two histograms of the same pH data, with the individual measurements marked as vertical ticks underneath. This is also known as a *rug plot*, and allows us to better assess the effect of bin width on the appearance of histograms. Histogram a) uses a bin width of 1 pH unit whereas histogram b) uses a bin width of 0.5 pH units. The two histograms look considerably different and it is not immediately clear which choice of bin width is best.

A number of rules of thumb are available to choose the optimal number of bins. For example, `Excel` uses a simple square root rule:

$$\#\text{bins} = \sqrt{n} \tag{2.1}$$

where n is the number of observations (i.e. $n = 20$ for the pH example). `R` uses Sturges' Rule:

$$\#\text{bins} = \log_2(n) - 1 \tag{2.2}$$

however no rule of thumb is optimal in all situations.

ii. Where to place the bins?

Even when the number of bins has been fixed, just shifting them slightly to the left or to the right can have a significant effect on the appearance of the histogram. For example:
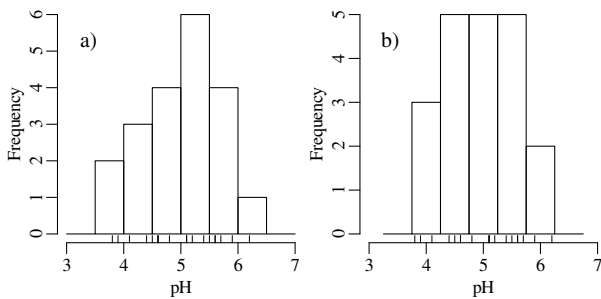
Figure 2.5: Two histograms of the pH data whose bin widths are the same, but whose bins have been offset by 0.25 pH units. This arbitrary decision strongly affects the appearance of the histogram.

To solve the bin placement problem, let us explore a variant of the ordinary histogram that is constructed as follows:

1. Rank the measurements from low to high along a line.

2. Place a rectangular 'box' on top of each measurement.

3. Stack the boxes to create one connected line.
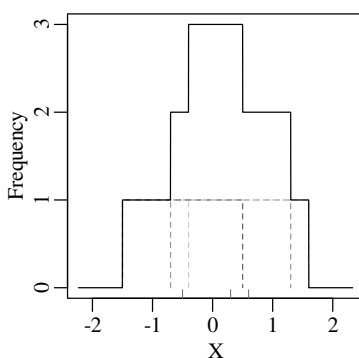
Figure 2.6: The rug plot along the bottom axis represents three data points. The grey dashed lines mark rectangular boxes ('kernels') that are centred around each of these data points. The black step function is obtained by taking the sum of these boxes. This procedure removes the need to choose bin locations.

Normalising the area under the resulting curve produces a so-called Kernel Density Estimate (KDE). The mathematical definition of this function is:

$$KDE(x) = \frac{1}{nh} \sum_{i=1}^{n} K\left(\frac{x - x_i}{h}\right) \tag{2.3}$$

where x_i is the ith measurement (out of n), h is the 'bandwidth' of the kernel density estimator, and $K(u)$ is the 'kernel' function. For the rectangular kernel:

$$K(u) = 1/2 \text{ if } |u| \leq 1, \text{ and } K(u) = 0 \text{ otherwise} \tag{2.4}$$

Applying this method to the pH data:

Figure 2.7: Rectangular KDE of the pH data, constructed using the same procedure as shown in Figure 2.6. The area under this curve has been normalised to unity.

Instead of a rectangular kernel, we could also use triangles to construct the KDE curve, or any other (symmetric) function. One popular choice is the Gaussian function:

$$K(u) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left[-\frac{u^2}{2}\right] \tag{2.5}$$

which produces a continuous KDE function:
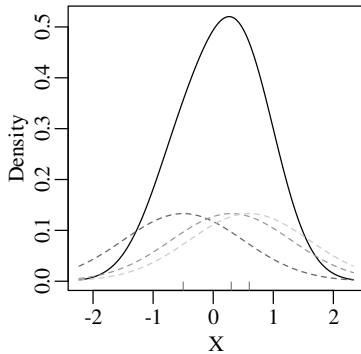
Figure 2.8: Using a Gaussian kernel instead of a rectangular kernel on the three data points of Figure 2.6. This produces a smooth KDE.

Using the Gaussian kernel to plot the pH data:
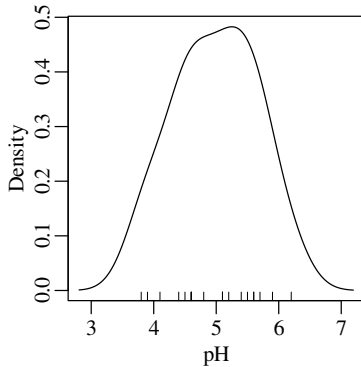
Figure 2.9: Gaussian KDE of the pH data. The continuous curve does more justice to the continuous data than the discrete step function of Figures 2.4, 2.5 or 2.7.

Although kernel density estimation solves the bin placement problem, it is not entirely free of design decisions. The bandwidth h of a KDE fulfils a similar role as the bin width of a

histogram. Changes in h affect the *smoothness* of the KDE curve:

Figure 2.10: Rug plots of the pH data with a) a kernel bandwidth of $h = 0.1$; and b) a bandwidth of $h = 1$. Using a narrow bandwidth undermooths the data, whereas a wide bandwidth produces an oversmoothed distribution.

Bandwidth selection is a similar problem to bin width selection. A deeper discussion of this problem falls outside the scope of text. Suffice it to say that most statistical software (including R) use equivalent rules of thumb to Sturges' Rule to set the bandwidth. But these values can be easily overruled by the user.

2.4   Data transformations

Consider the following dataset of 20 measurements of sedimentary clast sizes, in centimetres:

0.35, 11.00, 6.00, 1.80, 2.30, 0.59, 8.40, 2.90, 5.90, 2.10,
1.20, 2.10, 1.10, 1.60, 0.90, 1.70, 3.40, 0.53, 2.20, 7.70

Figure 2.11: Rug plot of 20 clast size measurements. Even though all the measurements are strictly positive, the KDE extends into negative data space.

Clast sizes are strictly positive values. Yet the left tail of the KDE extends into negative data space, implying that there is a finite chance of observing negative sizes. This is clearly nonsense. In geophysics, positive quantities are sometimes called *Jeffreys quantities* (so named after the British geophysicist Sir Harold Jeffreys). In addition to length, other examples of Jeffreys quantities are mass, volume, density, speed, etc. These parameters exist within an infinite half space between 0 and $+\infty$. We can transform them to the entire infinite space of numbers by applying a logarithmic transformation:

Figure 2.12: a) KDE of the clast size measurements, after applying a (natural) logarithmic transformation. Note how the distribution has become more symmetric compared to the linear scale of Figure 2.11. b) The same KDE mapped back to linear scale. Unlike Figure 2.11, the mapped distribution does not cross over into negative values.

Jeffreys quantities are just one example of constrained measurements. As another example, consider the following twenty porosity measurements in limestone:

$$5.8, \ 28.0, \ 12.0, \ 27.0, \ 40.0, \ 12.0, \ 3.8, \ 6.3, \ 17.0, \ 16.0,$$
$$95.0, \ 94.0, \ 92.0, \ 88.0, \ 88.0, \ 70.0, \ 92.0, \ 72.0, \ 74.0, \ 84.0$$

Porosity takes on values between 0 and 1 (if expressed as fractions, or between 0 and 100 if expressed as percentages). Yet again the Gaussian KDE of the data plot into physically impossible values of < 0 and > 1:

Figure 2.13: Rug plot of 20 porosity measurements. Even though all the measurements are between 0 and 1, the KDE extends beyond these hard limits.

Using a similar approach as before, the dataspace can be opened up from the constraints of the 0 to 1 interval to the entire line of numbers, from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$. For proportions, this is achieved by the *logistic transformation*:

$$u = \text{logit}(x) = \ln\left[\frac{x}{1-x}\right] \tag{2.6}$$

After constructing the density estimate (or carrying out any other numerical manipulation), the results can be mapped back to the 0 to 1 interval with the inverse logit transformation:

$$x = \text{logit}^{-1}(u) = \frac{\exp[u]}{\exp[u]+1} \tag{2.7}$$

Figure 2.14: a) KDE of the porosity data, after applying a logistic transformation. Note the two horizonal axes. The top axis marks the transformed values on a linear scale that extends from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$. The bottom axis is labeled by the actual porosity values on a non-linear scale that extends from 0 to 1. b) The same distribution mapped back to the $0 - 1$ interval.

We will see in chapter 14 that the logistic transformation is a special case of a general class of *logratio transformations* that are useful for the analysis of *compositional data*.

2.5   Multivariate distributions

KDEs can be generalised from one to two dimensions. For example, consider a dataset of eruption timings from the Old Faithful geyser in Yellowstone national park (Wyoming, USA):
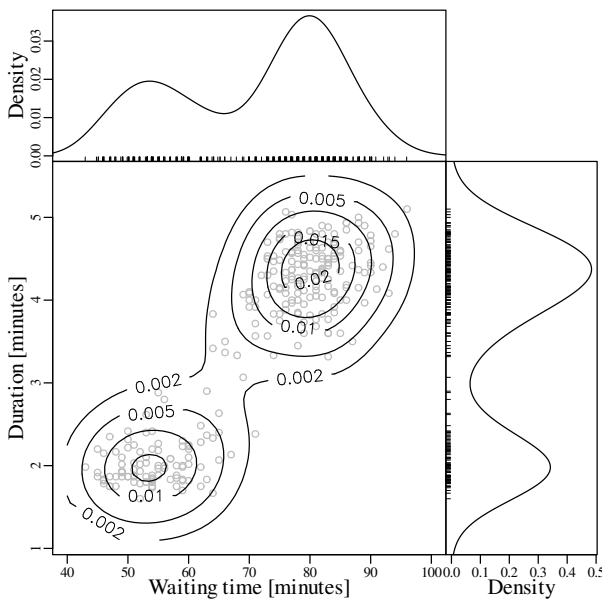
Figure 2.15: Old Faithful eruption measurements. The dataset records 272 observations of 2 variables: the duration of each eruption, and the waiting time between them. Both variables are expressed in minutes. The lower left panel shows the bivariate measurements as grey circles. The contour lines represent a 2-dimensional KDE. The marginal distributions of the waiting times (top) and eruption durations (right) are shown as 1-dimensional KDEs.

It is generally not possible to visualise datasets of more than two dimensions in a single graphic. In this case there are two options:

1. plot the data as a series of 1- or 2-dimensional marginal plots; or

2. extract the most important patterns or trends in the data by projection onto a lower dimensional plane. Then show these projected data as a lower dimensional graphic.

The second strategy is also known as "ordination" and will be discussed in detail in section 12.1.

2.6 Empirical cumulative distribution fuctions

Both histograms and kernel density estimates require the selection of a 'smoothing parameter'. For the histogram, this is the bin width; for the KDE, it is the bandwidth. Despite the existence of rules thumbs to automatically choose an appropriate value for the smoothing parameter, there nevertheless is a level of arbitrariness associated with them. The empirical cumulative distribution function (ECDF) is an alternative data visualisation device that does not require smoothing. An ECDF is step function that jumps up by $1/n$ at each of n data points. The mathematical formula for this procedure can be written as:

$$F(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} 1(x_i < x)/n \tag{2.8}$$

where $1(*) = 1$ if $*$ is 'true' and $1(*) = 0$ if $*$ is 'false'. The y-coordinates of the ECDF are values from 0 to 1 that mark the fraction of the measurements that are less than a particular value. Plotting the pH, clast size, porosity and geyser data as ECDFs:

Figure 2.16: Empirical cumulative distribution functions (ECDFs) of, from left to right: a) the pH data (whose KDE is shown in Figure 2.9); b) the clast size data of Figure 2.11; c) the porosity data of Figure 2.13; and d) the eruption time data of Figure 2.15. Note that ECDFs are only applicable to 1-dimensional datasets.

ECDFs do not require binning or selecting a bandwidth. Because they do not require smoothing, they do not spill over into physically impossible values for the clast size and porosity data. Therefore the construction of an ECDF is completely hands off.

The visual interpetation of ECDFs is different from that of histograms or KDEs. Whereas different clusters of values stand out as 'peaks' in a histogram or KDE, they are marked by steep segments of the ECDF. For example, the two peaks in the KDE of the geyser data (Figure 2.15) correspond to two steps in the ECDF (Figure 2.16.d).

Chapter 3

Summary statistics

After a purely qualitive inspection of the data, we can now move on to a more quantitive description. This chapter will introduce a number of *summary statistics* to summarise larger datasets using just a few numerical values, including:

1. a measure of *location*, representing the 'average' of the data;

2. a measure of statistical *dispersion*, quantifying the spread of the data; and

3. a measure of the *shape* of the distribution.

Before proceeding with this topic, it is useful to bear in mind that these summary statistics have limitations. The Anscombe quartet of Table 2.1 and Figure 2.1 showed that very different looking datasets can have identical summary statistics. But with this caveat in mind, summary statistics are an essential component of data analysis provided that they are preceded by a visual inspection of the data.

3.1 Location

There are many ways to define the 'average' value of a multi-value dataset. In this chapter, we will introduce three of these but later chapters will introduce a few more.

1. **Mean.** Given a dataset $x = \{x_1, \ldots, x_i, \ldots, x_n\}$ comprising n values, the arithmetic mean ($\bar{x}$) is defined as:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \tag{3.1}$$

2. **Median.** The median is obtained by ranking the observations according to size, and selecting the middle value. If n is an odd number, then:

$$\mathrm{med}(x) = x_1 < \ldots < \mathbf{x_{n/2}} < \ldots < x_n \tag{3.2}$$

   If n is an even number, then the median is the average of the two numbers on either side of the middle. Graphically, the median can be identified as the value that corresponds the to halfway point of the ECDF.

3. **Mode.** The mode is the most frequently occurring value in a dataset. It can be identified as the highest point on a KDE or the steepest point on the ECDF.

Applying these three concepts to the pH data, the mean is given by:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\begin{array}{c} 6.2 + 4.4 + 5.6 + 5.2 + 4.5 + 5.4 + 4.8 + 5.9 + 3.9 + 3.8+ \\ 5.1 + 4.1 + 5.1 + 5.5 + 5.1 + 4.6 + 5.7 + 4.6 + 4.6 + 5.6 \end{array}}{20} = 5.00$$

The median is obtained by ranking the values in increasing order, and marking the two middle values in bold:

3.8, 3.9, 4.1, 4.4, 4.5, 4.6, 4.6, 4.6, 4.8, **5.1**, **5.1**, 5.1, 5.2, 5.4, 5.5, 5.6, 5.6, 5.7, 5.9, 6.2

Then the median is the average of these two values (median[x] = 5.1). Finally, the mode is the pH value that corresponds to the maximum value of the KDE (mode[x]=5.25):

Figure 3.1: Rug plot (top) and ECDF (bottom) of the pH data. The mean (solid vertical line) is 5.00, the median (dashed line) is 5.10 and the mode (dotted line) is 5.25. The dash-dot line on the bottom panel marks halfway mark of the ECDF. The intersection of this line with the ECDF marks the median. All three measures of location are closely spaced together in the densest part of the dataset.

Calculating the same three summary statistics for the clast size data:

Figure 3.2: Rug plot and ECDF of the clast size data. The mean (solid vertical line) is 3.19, the median (dashed line) is 2.1, and the mode (dotted line) is 0.45. There is a factor 7 difference between the smallest and largest measure of location for this dataset. The mean is strongly affected by the long 'tail' of large outliers. Only 6 out of 20 clasts (30%) are larger than the mean of the distribution and only 1 is (5%) is smaller than the mode.

Finally, repeating the exercise one more time for the porosity and geyser eruption data:

Figure 3.3: Rug plot and ECDF of a) the porosity data (mean = 0.51, median = 0.55, mode = 0.97); and b) the geyser eruption data (mean = 3.49, median = 4.0, mode = 4.37). Both of these distributions are 'bimodal', meaning that they have two 'peaks' in the KDE, corresponding to two steep segments in the ECDFs. The dotted lines mark the highest one of them and ignores the other one. The mean and median fall in between the two modes and are not representative of the data.

Comparing the three sets of examples leads to the following conclusions:

1. the mean is a meaningful measure of location for unimodal and symmetric distribution;

2. the mean is more strongly affected by outliers than the median;

3. therefore the median is more a more robust estimator of location for asymmetric datasets;

4. multimodal datasets cannot be adequately summarised with a single location parameter.

3.2   Dispersion

It is rare for all the values in a dataset to be exactly the same. In most cases they are spread out over a finite range of values. The amount of spread can be defined in a number of ways, the most common of which are:

1. **Standard deviation.** Given n measurements x_i (for $1 \leq i \leq n$), the standard deviation is defined as:

$$s[x] = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_i - \bar{x})^2} \qquad (3.3)$$

where $\bar{x}$ is the arithmetic mean (Equation 3.1). The square of the standard deviation (i.e. $s[x]^2$) is also known as the **variance**.

2. **Median Absolute Deviation (MAD).** Whereas the standard deviation quantifies the dispersion around the mean, MAD quantifies the dispersion around the median:

$$\text{MAD} = \text{median}|x_i - \text{median}(x)| \tag{3.4}$$

where '$|*|$' stands for "the absolute value of $*$".

3. **Interquartile range (IQR).** The ECDF can be used to define the **quantiles** of a sample distribution. For example, the 0.1 quantile (or 10th **percentile**) of the pH data is 3.9, because 10% of the pH values are ≤ 3.9. Thus, the median is equivalent to the "0.5 quantile" or the "50 percentile". The 25, 50 and 75 percentiles are also known as the **quartiles**. The IQR marks the difference between the third and the first quantile (i.e., 25 and 75 percentile).

Calculating the standard deviation of the pH data (whose mean is $\bar{x} = 5.0$):

i	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
x_i	6.2	4.4	5.6	5.2	4.5	5.4	4.8	5.9	3.9	3.8	5.1	4.1	5.1	5.5	5.1	4.6	5.7	4.6	4.6	5.6
$(x_i - \bar{x})$	1.20	-.58	.61	.21	-.49	.42	-.19	.92	-1.1	-1.2	.11	-.89	.11	.51	.11	-.39	.71	-.39	-.39	.61
$(x_i - \bar{x})^2$	1.5	.34	.38	.046	.24	.17	.034	.84	1.2	1.4	.013	.78	.013	.27	.013	.15	.51	.15	.15	.38

Taking the sum of the last row:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{20}(x_i - \bar{x})^2 = 8.52$$

from which we get:

$$s[x] = \sqrt{8.52/19} = 0.70$$

Sorting the pH values in increasing order and recalling that $\text{med}(x) = 5.1$:

i	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
x_i	3.8	3.9	4.1	4.4	**4.5**	**4.6**	4.6	4.6	4.8	5.1	5.1	5.1	5.2	5.4	**5.5**	**5.6**	5.6	5.7	5.9	6.2
$x_i - \text{med}(x)$	-1.3	-1.2	-1.0	-0.7	-0.6	-0.5	-0.5	-0.5	-0.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.8	1.1
$|x_i - \text{med}(x)|$	1.3	1.2	1.0	0.7	0.6	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.3	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.5	0.6	0.8	1.1
sorted	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.1	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.5	0.5	**0.5**	**0.5**	0.5	0.6	0.6	0.7	0.8	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.3

The MAD is given by the mean of the bold values on the final row of this table, yielding a value of MAD = 0.5.

The 25 and 75 percentiles are obtained by averaging the two pairs of bold faced numbers on the second row of the table. They are 4.55 and 5.55, respectively. Therefore, IQR = 5.55 - 4.55 = 1.00. Showing the same calculation on an ECDF:

Figure 3.4: ECDF of the pH data with indication of the three quantiles, namely the 25 percentile, median and 75 percentile. The Interquartile Range (IQR) is defined as the difference between the 75 and 25 percentiles. This is 1 pH unit in this example. The standard deviation and Median Absolute Deviation are $s[x] = 0.7$ and MAD = 0.5 pH units, respectively.

3.3 Shape

The **skewness** of a distribution is defined as:

$$\text{skew}(x) = \frac{1}{n \cdot s[x]^3} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_i - \bar{x})^3 \tag{3.5}$$

To assess the meaning of this new summary statistic, let us plot the pH and clast size datasets alongside the distribution of Covid-19 death rates (in deaths per 100,000 people) in the UK:

Figure 3.5: a) the frequency distributions of pH data is symmetric and is characterised by a near zero (but ever so slightly negative) skewness; b) the clast size measurements are positively skewed, i.e. they heavily lean towards small values with a heavy 'tail' of higher values; c) finally, the distribution of Covid-19 death rates in the UK is negatively skewed: old people are much more likely to die of covid than young people.

3.4 Box-and-whisker plots

A box-and-wisker plot is a compact way to jointly visualise the most important summary statistics in a dataset:

1. a box is drawn from the first to the third quartile (i.e. from the 25 to the 75 percentile);

2. the median is marked by a line in the middle of the box;

3. two lines extend from the box towards the minimum and maximum value, ignoring outliers (as defined next);

4. any points that fall more than 1.5 times the IQR below the first quartile, or more than 1.5 times the IQR above the third quartile are marked as outliers.

Figure 3.6: KDE (top) and box-and-whisker plot (bottom) of the clast size data. The width of the box marks the IQR. The whiskers extend to the minimum and maximum value, excluding a single outlier which, at ∼11cm, is more than 1.5 IQR larger than the third quartile (75 percentile). The median is offset towards the left hand side of the box, indicating the positive skewness of the dataset.

Chapter 4

Probability

Probability is a numerical description of how likely it is for an event to occur or how likely it is for a proposition to be true. In the context of a sampling experiment, the probability of an outcome A can be defined as:

$$P(A) = \frac{\text{the number of ways } A \text{ can occur}}{\text{the total number of outcomes}} \qquad (4.1)$$

For example, the probability of tossing an unbiased coin and observing a head (H) is

$$\frac{\{H\}}{\{H\}\{T\}} = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5$$

The probability of tossing the same coin three times and obtaining two heads and one tail (T) is:

$$P(2 \times H \cap 1 \times T) = \frac{\{THH\}\{HTH\}\{HHT\}}{\{HHH\}\{THH\}\{HTH\}\{HHT\}\{TTH\}\{THT\}\{HTT\}\{TTT\}} = \frac{3}{8} \qquad (4.2)$$

where $\cap$ stands for 'and' in the sense of "the intersection of two sets of outcomes". Similarly, the probability of throwing two dice and obtaining a two (⚁) and a six (⚅) is:

$$P\left(1 \times \boxed{} \cap 1 \times \boxed{}\right) = \frac{\{\boxed{}\ \boxed{}\}\{\boxed{}\ \boxed{}\}}{\text{(6×6 grid of dice outcomes)}} = \frac{2}{36} = \frac{1}{18} \qquad (4.3)$$

The **multiplicative rule of probability** dictates that the probability of two combined (independent) experiments is given by the product of their respective probabilities. Thus, if one were to carry out a coin tossing *and* a dice throwing experiment, then the probability of obtaining two heads and one tail for the first experiment *and* throwing a two and a six in the second experiment is:

$$P\left(\{2 \times H \cap 1 \times T\} \cap \{1 \times \boxed{} \cap 1 \times \boxed{}\}\right) = \frac{3}{8}\frac{1}{18} = \frac{3}{144} = 0.021$$

The **additive rule of probability** dictates that the probability of observing *either* of two mutually exclusive outcomes is given by the sum of their respective probabilities. Thus, the probability of obtaining two heads and one tail *or* throwing three heads is:

$$P\left(\{2 \times H \cap 1 \times T\} \cup \{3 \times H\}\right) = \frac{3}{8} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{4}{8} = 0.5$$

4.1 Permutations

A permutation is an ordered arrangement of objects. These objects can be selected in one of two ways:

1. **sampling with replacement.** Consider an urn with n balls that are numbered 1 through n. Draw a ball from the urn and write down its number. There are n possible outcomes for this experiment. Then place the ball back in the urn, thoroughly mix the balls and draw a second one. Write down its number. There are n possible outcomes for the second experiment. Using the multiplicative rule of probability, there are $(n \times n)$ possible outcomes for the two numbers. Repeat until you have drawn k balls (where $k \leq n$). Then the number of possible combinations of numbers is

$$\overbrace{n \times n \times \ldots \times n}^{k \text{ times}} = n^k \tag{4.4}$$

2. **sampling without replacement.** Consider the same urn as before and draw a first number. Like before, there are n possible outcomes. However this time we do not put the ball back into the urn. With the first ball removed, draw a second number. This time there are only $(n-1)$ possible outcomes. Thus, the total number of combinations for the first two numbers is $n \times (n-1)$. Continuing the experiment until you have drawn k balls yields

$$n \times (n-1) \times (n-2) \times \ldots \times (n-k+1) = \frac{n!}{(n-k)!} \tag{4.5}$$

   possible combinations, where '!' is the factorial operator.

Let us apply these two formulas to a classical statistical problem: *"what is the probability that two students in a classroom of k celebrate their birthdays on the same day?"*. The solution is as follows.

1. There are $(n =)$ 365 possible days on which the first person might celebrate their birthday.

2. There are 365 possible days on which the second person might celebrate their birthday, but only 364 of these do not overlap with the first person's birthday.

3. There are another 365 possible days on which the third person might celebrate their birthday, but only 363 of these do not overlap with the birthdays of the first two people.

4. For k people, there are 365^k possible combinations of birthdays (sampling with replacement), but only $365 \times 364 \times \ldots (k+1) = 365!/(365-k)!$ of these combinations do not overlap (sampling without replacement).

5. Therefore, the probability that two people's birthdays do not overlap is given by

$$P(\text{no overlapping birthdays}) = \frac{365!}{(365-k)!365^k}$$

6. And the probability that at least two people's birthdays overlap is

$$P(> 1 \text{ overlapping birthdays}) = 1 - \frac{365!}{(365-k)!365^k}$$

If $k = 23$, then $P(> 1 \text{ overlapping birthdays}) = 0.507$. In other words, there is a greater than 50% chance that at least two students will share the same birthday in a classroom of 23.

4.2 Combinations

Section 4.1 showed that there are n^k unique possible ways to select k objects from a collection of n with replacement. For example, there are $2^3 = 8$ ways for three coins to land:

$$\{HHH\}\{THH\}\{HTH\}\{HHT\}\{TTH\}\{THT\}\{HTT\}\{TTT\}$$

and there are $6^2 = 36$ ways for two dice to land:
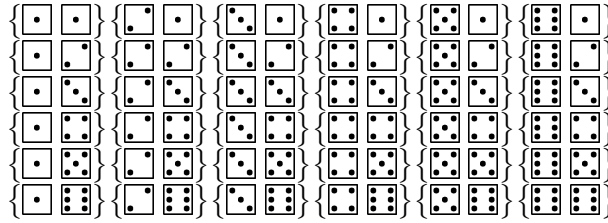
Note that these are the denumenators of the two examples that were given in the introductory paragraph of this chapter. Also note that the collection of outcomes contains quite a few duplicate values. For the coin example, these fall into two groups of three duplicates:

$$\{\{HTT\}\{THT\}\{HHT\}\} \text{ and } \{\{THH\}\{HTH\}\{TTH\}\}$$

For the dice, there are fifteen groups of duplicate pairs:
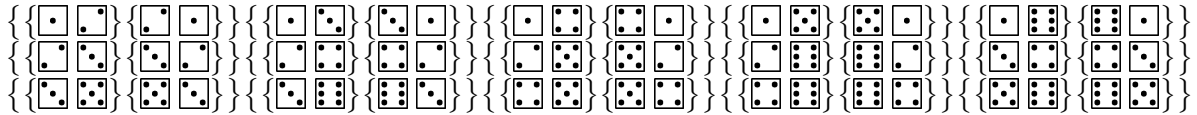
Suppose that we don't care in which order the objects (coins, dice) appear. How many different **unordered** samples are possible?

$$(\# \text{ ordered samples}) = (\# \text{ unordered samples}) \times (\# \text{ ways to order the samples})$$

There are $n!/(n-k)!$ ways to select k objects from a collection of n, and there are $k!$ ways to order these k objects. Therefore

$$(\# \text{ unordered samples}) = \frac{(\# \text{ ordered samples})}{(\# \text{ ways to order the samples})} = \frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!}$$

The formula on the right hand side of this equation gives the number of combinations of k elements among a collection of n. This formula is also known as the **binomial coefficient** and is often written as $\binom{n}{k}$ (pronounce "n choose k"):

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{(n-k)!k!} \tag{4.6}$$

Revisiting the two examples at the start of this chapter, the number of ways to arrange two heads among three coins is

$$\binom{3}{2} = \frac{3!}{1!2!} = \frac{6}{2} = 3$$

which is the numerator of Equation 4.2; and the number of combinations of one $\boxed{\cdot}$ and one $\boxed{\vdots}$ is

$$\binom{2}{1} = \frac{2!}{1!1!} = 2$$

which is the numerator of Equation 4.3.

4.3   Conditional probability

So far we have assumed that all experiments (coin tosses, throws of a dice) were done *independently*, so that the outcome of one experiment did not affect that of the other. However this is not always the case in geology. Sometimes one event depends on another one. We can capture this phenomenon with the following definition:

$$P(A|B) = \text{"The conditional probability of } A \text{ given } B\text{"} \tag{4.7}$$

Let $P(A)$ be the probability that a sedimentary deposit contains *ammonite* fossils. And let $P(B)$ be the proportion of our field area that is covered by sedimentary rocks of *Bajocian* age (170.3 – 168.3 Ma). Then $P(A|B)$ is the probability that a given Bajocian deposit contains ammonite fossils. Conversely, $P(B|A)$ is the probability that an ammonite fossil came from a Bajocian deposit.

The **multiplication law** dictates that:

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A|B)P(B) = P(B|A)P(A) = P(B \cap A) \tag{4.8}$$

Suppose that 70% of our field area is covered by Bajocian deposits ($P(B) = 0.7$), and that 20% of those Bajocian deposits contain ammonite fossils ($P(A|B) = 0.2$). Then there is a 14% ($= 0.7 \times 0.2$) chance that the field area contains Bajocian ammonites.

The **law of total probability** prescribes that, given n mutually exclusive scenarios B_i (for $1 \leq i \leq n$):

$$P(A) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} P(A|B_i)P(B_i) \tag{4.9}$$

Consider a river whose catchment contains 70% Bajocian deposits ($P(B_1) = 0.7$) and 30% *Bathonian*[1] deposits ($P(B_2) = 0.3$). Recall that the Bajocian is 20% likely to contain ammonite fossils ($P(A|B_1) = 0.2$), and suppose that the Bathonian is 50% likely to contain such fossils ($P(A|B_2) = 0.5$). How likely is it that the river catchment contains ammonites? Using Equation 4.9:

$$P(A) = P(A|B_1)P(B_1) + P(A|B_2)P(B_2) = 0.2 \times 0.7 + 0.5 \times 0.3 = 0.29$$

Equation 4.8 can be rearranged to form **Bayes' Rule**:

$$P(B|A) = \frac{P(A|B)P(B)}{P(A)} \tag{4.10}$$

---

[1]the Bathonian immediately overlies the Bajocian and is dated 168.3 – 166.1 Ma

or, combining Equation 4.10 with Equation 4.9:

$$P(B_j|A) = \frac{P(A|B_j)P(B_j)}{\sum\limits_{i=1}^{n} P(A|B_i)P(B_i)} \tag{4.11}$$

Suppose that we have found an ammonite fossil in the river bed. What is its likely age? Using Equation 4.11, the probability that the unknown fossil is Bajocian (B_1) is given by:

$$P(B_1|A) = \frac{P(A|B_1)P(B_1)}{P(A|B_1)P(B_1) + P(A|B_2)P(B_2)} = \frac{0.2 \times 0.7}{0.2 \times 0.7 + 0.5 \times 0.3} = 0.48$$

Thus there is a 48% chance that the fossil is Bajocian, and a 52% chance that it is Bathonian.

Chapter 5

The binomial distribution

A **Bernoulli variable** takes on only two values: 0 or 1. For example:

1. a coin may land on its head (1) or tail (0);
2. a die may land on ⚁ (1) or not (0);
3. a 'wildcat' exploration well may find petroleum (1) or be dry (0).

Consider five gold diggers during the 1849 California gold rush, who have each purchased a claim in the Sierra Nevada foothills. Geological evidence suggests that, on average, two thirds of the claims in the area should contain gold (1), and the remaining third do not (0). The probability that none of the five prospectors find gold is

$$P(0 \times \text{gold}) = P(00000) = (1/3)^5 = 0.0041$$

The chance that exactly one of the prospectors strikes gold is

$$P(1 \times \text{gold}) = P(10000) + P(01000) + P(00100) + P(00010) + P(00001)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
P(10000) &= (2/3)(1/3)^4 = 0.0082 \\
P(01000) &= (1/3)(2/3)(1/3)^3 = 0.0082 \\
P(00100) &= (1/3)^2(2/3)(1/3)^2 = 0.0082 \\
P(00010) &= (1/3)^3(2/3)(1/3) = 0.0082 \\
P(00001) &= (1/3)^4(2/3) = 0.0082
\end{aligned}$$

so that

$$P(1 \times \text{gold}) = \binom{5}{1}(2/3)(1/3)^4 = 5 \times 0.0082 = 0.041$$

in which we recognise the binomial coefficient (Equation 4.6). Similarly:

$$P(2 \times \text{gold}) = \binom{5}{2}(2/3)^2(1/3)^3 = 10 \times 0.016 = 0.16$$

$$P(3 \times \text{gold}) = \binom{5}{3}(2/3)^3(1/3)^2 = 10 \times 0.033 = 0.33$$

$$P(4 \times \text{gold}) = \binom{5}{4}(2/3)^4(1/3) = 5 \times 0.066 = 0.33$$

$$P(5 \times \text{gold}) = (2/3)^5 = 0.13$$

These probabilities form a **probability mass function** (PMF), and can be visualised as a bar chart:

Figure 5.1: The probability mass function (PMF) for a binomial experiment with a 2/3 chance of success (and a 1/3 chance of failure) for five gold prospecting claims. The horizontal axis is labelled with the number of claims that produce gold. The vertical axis shows the probability of these respective outcomes.

The generic equation for the binomial distribution is

$$P(k|n,p) = \binom{n}{k}p^k(1-p)^{n-k} \tag{5.1}$$

where p is the probability of success and k is the number of successes out of n trials. Equivalently, the results can also be shown as a **cumulative distribution function** (CDF):

$$F(x) = P(X \le x) \tag{5.2}$$

Figure 5.2: The cumulative distribution function (CDF) of the binomial distribution. This is the running sum of Figure 5.1. The horizontal axis is labelled with the number of claims that produce gold. The vertical axis shows the cumulative probability of these respective outcomes. For example, the probability that two or fewer prospectors find gold is 21%.

5.1   Parameter estimation

The previous section assumed that the probability of success (p in Equation 5.1) is known. In the real world, this is rarely the case. In fact, p is usually the parameter whose value we want to

determine based on some data. Consider the general case of k successes among n trials. Then we can estimate p by reformulating Equation 5.1 in terms of p instead of k:

$$\mathcal{L}(p|n,k) = \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k} \tag{5.3}$$

This is called the **likelihood function**. The only difference between the probability mass function (Equation 5.1) and the likelihood function (Equation 5.3) is that former estimates the probability of an outcome given the parameter ($P(k|n,p)$), whereas the latter estimates the parameter given some data ($P(p|n,k)$). The *most likely* value of p given n and k can be found by taking the derivative of Equation 5.3 with respect to p and setting it to zero:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}(p|n,k)}{\partial p} = 0$$

which gives

$$\binom{n}{k} k p^{k-1} (1-p)^{n-k} - \binom{n}{k} p^k (n-k)(1-p)^{n-k-1} = 0$$

Dividing by $\binom{n}{k}$ and rearranging:

$$k p^{k-1} (1-p)^{n-k} = p^k (n-k)(1-p)^{n-k-1}$$

Dividing both sides by $p^k (1-p)^{n-k}$:

$$k(1-p) = p(n-k)$$

which can be solved for p:

$$\hat{p} = \frac{k}{n} \tag{5.4}$$

The ˆ symbol indicates that $\hat{p}$ is an *estimate* for p that may differ from the actual parameter value p.

Let us apply Equation 5.4 to our gold prospecting example. Suppose that only two of the five claims produce gold. Then our best estimate for p given this result is

$$\hat{p} = \frac{2}{5} = 0.4$$

So based on this very small dataset, our best estimate for the abundance of gold in the Sierra Nevada foothills is 40%. This may be a trivial result, but it is nevertheless a useful one. The derivation of Equation 5.4 from Equation 5.3 follows a recipe that underpins much of mathematical statistics. It is called the **method of maximum likelihood**. Of course, the derivation of parameter estimates is not always as easy as it is for the binomial case.

5.2 Hypothesis tests

Let us continue with our gold prospecting example. Given that only two of the five prospectors found gold, our best estimate for the abundance of gold-bearing claims in the prospecting area is $\hat{p} = 2/5$ (40%). However the introductory paragraph to this chapter mentioned that geological evidence suggests that $2/3$ (67%) of the claims should contain gold. Can the discrepancy between the predicted and the observed number of successes by attributed to bad luck, or does it mean

that the geological estimates were wrong? To answer this question, we follow the following sequence of steps:

1. Formulate two hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**) $p = 2/3$

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): $p < 2/3$

2. Calculate the **test statistic** T, which in this case is the number of success (k).

3. Determine the **null distribution** of T under $H_\circ$. In our example this is the binomial distribution, as shown in Figures 5.1 and 5.2. Tabulating the PMF and CDF of success:

k	0	1	*2*	3	4	5
$P(T = k)$	0.0041	0.0411	*0.1646*	0.3292	0.3292	0.1317
$P(T \leq k)$	0.0041	0.0453	*0.2099*	0.5391	0.8683	1.0000

   The **p-value**[1] is the probability of obtaining test results at least as extreme as the results actually observed, under the assumption that the null hypothesis is correct. For our one-sided test, the p-value is 0.2099, which corresponds the probability of observing $k \leq 2$ successful claims if $p = 2/3$.

4. Choose a **significance level** α. It is customary to choose $\alpha = 0.05$.

5. Mark all the outcomes that are incompatible with $H_\circ$. This **rejection region** is marked in bold in the following table:

k	**0**	**1**	*2*	3	4	5
$P(T = k)$	0.0041	0.0411	*0.1646*	0.3292	0.3292	0.1317
$P(T \leq k)$	**0.0041**	**0.0453**	*0.2099*	0.5391	0.8683	1.0000

   $k = 0$ and $k = 1$ are incompatible with $H_\circ$ because the probability of finding gold in $k \leq 1$ claims is only 0.0453, which is less than α. Therefore our rejection region contains two values:

   $$R = \{0, 1\}$$

6. Reach a **decision**. Evaluate whether the observed outcome for the test statistics falls inside the rejection region. If it does, then $H_\circ$ is rejected in favour of H_a. In our example,

   $$k = 2 \notin R$$

   which means that we cannot reject $H_\circ$. Alternatively, and equivalently, we can reach the same conclusion by observing that the p-value is greater than α (i.e., $0.2099 > 0.05$). *Note that failure to reject the null hypothesis does <u>not</u> mean that said hypothesis has been accepted!*

---

[1]The term 'p-value' is not to be confused with the value of our unknown binomial parameter p. The p-value would exist even if we had named the binomial parameter something else (e.g., q).

Displaying the rejection region graphically:
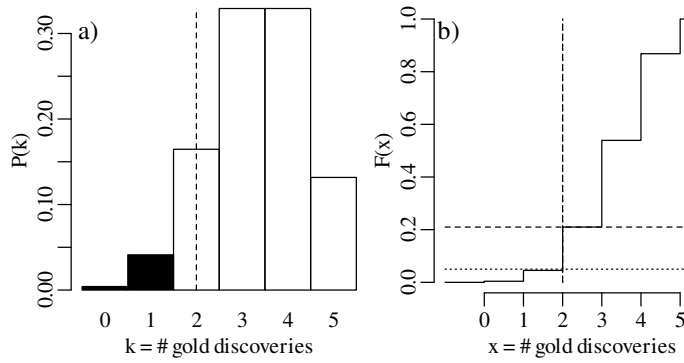
Figure 5.3: a) PMF and b) CDF of a binomial null distribution with $p = 2/3$ and $n = 5$. The rejection region is marked in black on a). The horizontal dotted line in b) shows the $\alpha = 0.05$ cutoff mark. The horizontal dashed line in b) marks the p-value for $k = 2$, which is greater than 0.05. Therefore, the null hypothesis cannot be rejected.

The above hypothesis test is called a **one-sided** hypothesis test, because $H_\circ$ and H_a are asymmetric. Alternatively, we can also formulate a **two-sided** hypothesis test:

1. In this case $H_\circ$ and H_a are symmetric:

   $H_\circ$ (null hypothesis) $p = 2/3$

   H_a (alternative hypothesis): $p \neq 2/3$

2. The test statistic remains the same as before.

3. We add one line to our table of cumulative outcomes, in order to evaluate the high end of the scale as well as its low end:

k	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(T = k)$	0.0041	0.0411	*0.1646*	0.3292	0.3292	0.1317
$P(T \leq k)$	0.0041	0.0453	*0.2099*	0.5391	0.8683	1.0000
$P(T \geq k)$	1.000	0.9959	*0.9547*	0.7901	0.4609	0.1317

4. The significance level is kept the same, but is now evaluated twice at $\alpha/2$ to accommodate both tails of the binomial distribution.

5. Mark all the outcomes that are incompatible with $H_\circ$, i.e. all the values $< \alpha/2$. This **rejection region** is marked in bold in the following table:

k	**0**	1	2	3	4	5
$P(T = k)$	0.0041	0.0411	*0.1646*	0.3292	0.3292	0.1317
$P(T \leq k)$	**0.0041**	0.0453	*0.2099*	0.5391	0.8683	1.0000
$P(T \geq k)$	1.000	0.9959	*0.9547*	0.7901	0.4609	0.1317

   which yields a smaller rejection region than before, because $P(T \leq 1) = 0.0453$, which is greater than $\alpha/2 = 0.025$. The same is true for $P(T \geq k)$ for any k. Therefore:

   $$R = \{0\}$$

6. Again, we fail to reject $H_\circ$, which means that the observed $k/n = 2/5$ success rate does not rule out the possibility that the true value of $p = 2/3$, and that the geologists were therefore correct.

Displaying the two-sided hypothesis test graphically:

Figure 5.4: a) the same PMF and b) CDF as Figure 5.3. The black bar marks the rejection region for $H_\circ$: $p = 2/3$ vs $H_a : p \neq 2/3$. Horizontal dotted lines mark $\alpha/2 = 0.025$ and $(1 - \alpha/2) = 0.975$. Their intersections with the CDF are shown as vertical dotted lines and mark the outer edges of the rejection region. The dashed lines mark the observed value and probability, which fall outside the rejection region. Therefore $H_\circ$ stands.

So in this case the one-sided and two-sided hypothesis tests produce exactly the same result. However this is not always the case.

5.3   Statistical power

Suppose that not five but fifteen gold prospectors had purchased a claim in the same area as before. And suppose that six of these prospectors had struck gold. Then the maximum likelihood estimate for p is:

$$\hat{p} = \frac{6}{15} = 0.4$$

which is the same as before. The one-sided hypothesis test ($H_\circ : p = 2/3$ vs. $H_a : p < 2/3$) proceeds as before, but leads to a different table of probabilities:

k	**0**	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	*6*	7
$P(T = k)$	$7.0{\times}10^{-8}$	$2.1{\times}10^{-6}$	$2.9{\times}10^{-5}$	$2.5{\times}10^{-4}$	0.0015	0.0067	*0.0223*	0.0574
$P(T \leq k)$	$\mathbf{7.0{\times}10^{-8}}$	$\mathbf{2.2{\times}10^{-6}}$	$\mathbf{3.1{\times}10^{-5}}$	$\mathbf{2.8{\times}10^{-4}}$	**0.0018**	**0.0085**	*0.0308*	0.0882
k	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
$P(T = k)$	0.1148	0.1786	0.2143	0.1948	0.1299	0.0599	0.0171	0.0023
$P(T \leq k)$	0.2030	0.3816	0.5959	0.7908	0.9206	0.9806	0.9977	1.0000

The rejection region (bold) consists of

$$R = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\} \tag{5.5}$$

which includes $k = 6$. Therefore $H_\circ$ has been rejected.
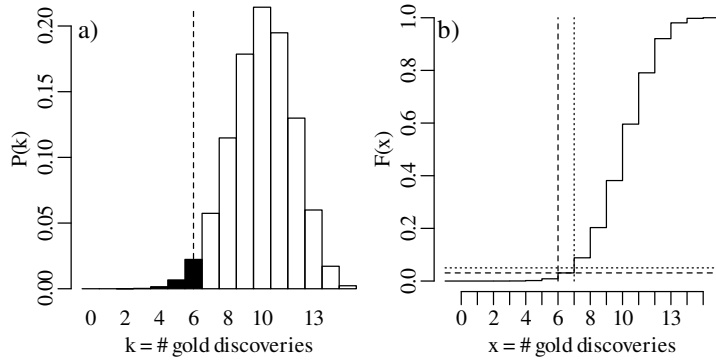
Figure 5.5: a) PMF and b) CDF of a binomial distribution with $p = 2/3$ and $n = 15$. The $\alpha = 0.05$ cutoff is shown as a horizontal dotted line and intersects the CDF at a point marked by a vertical dotted line. The vertical dashed lines mark the observation ($k = 6$), which falls in the black area of the bar chart, and to the left of the dotted line in the CDF. Therefore, $H_\circ$ is rejected.

For the two-sided hypothesis test ($H_\circ : p = 2/3$ vs. $H_a : p \neq 2/3$):

k	**0**	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	*6*	7
$P(T = k)$	7.0×10^{-8}	2.1×10^{-6}	2.9×10^{-5}	2.5×10^{-4}	0.0015	0.0067	*0.0223*	0.0574
$P(T \leq k)$	**7.0×10^{-8}**	**2.2×10^{-6}**	**3.1×10^{-5}**	**2.8×10^{-4}**	**0.0018**	**0.0085**	*0.0308*	0.0882
$P(T \geq k)$	1.0000	$1-7.0 \times 10^{-8}$	$1-2.2 \times 10^{-6}$	$1-3.1 \times 10^{-5}$	$1-2.8 \times 10^{-4}$	0.9982	*0.9915*	0.9692
k	8	9	10	11	12	13	**14**	**15**
$P(T = k)$	0.1148	0.1786	0.2143	0.1948	0.1299	0.0599	0.0171	0.0023
$P(T \leq k)$	0.2030	0.3816	0.5959	0.7908	0.9206	0.9806	0.9977	1.0000
$P(T \geq k)$	0.9118	0.7970	0.6184	0.4041	0.2092	0.0794	**0.0194**	**0.0023**

The rejection region (which includes both tails of the distribution) is:

$$R = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 14, 15\} \tag{5.6}$$

This region does *not* include $k = 6$. Therefore we *cannot* reject the two-sided null hypothesis that $p = 2/3$.
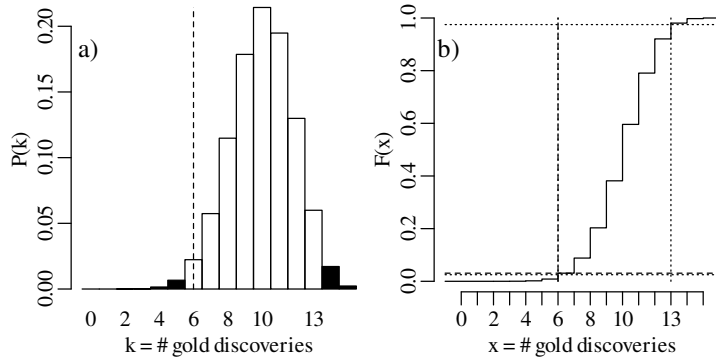
Figure 5.6: a) PMF and b) CDF of the binomial distribution with $p = 2/3$ and $n = 15$. The dotted lines mark the $\alpha/2 = 0.025$ and $(1 - \alpha/2) = 0.975$ levels and quantiles. The dashed lines mark the observed value ($k = 6$), which falls outside the rejection region. Therefore $H_\circ$ stands.

Let us increase our 'sample size' (number of prospectors) even more, from 15 to 30, and suppose once again that only 40% of these found gold even though the geological evidence suggested that this should be 67%. The lookup table of probabilities would be quite large, so we will just show the distributions graphically:
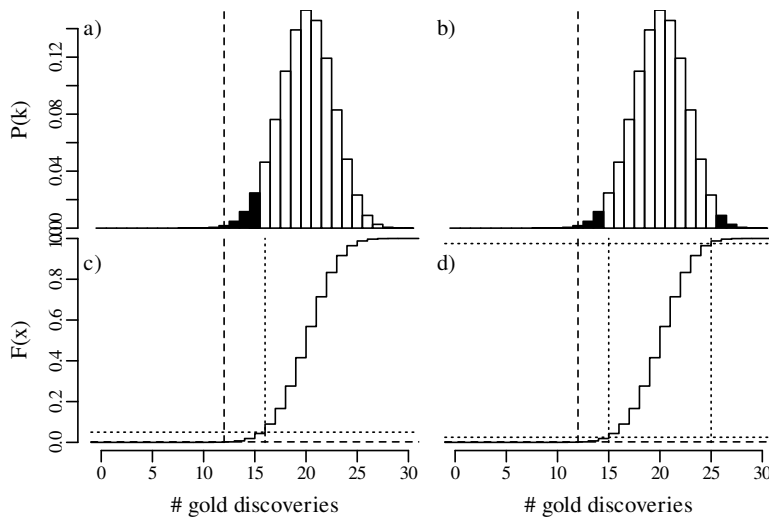
Figure 5.7: The PMF (a & b) and CDF (c & d) for a binomial distribution with $p = 2/3$ and $n = 30$. The vertical dashed lines mark the observation $k = 12$, which falls outside the cutoff limits defined by the vertical dotted lines, and inside the rejection regions marked in black.

In summary, we have compared the same outcome of 40% successes based on three different sample sizes (n):

1. Both the one-sided and the two-sided hypothesis tests failed to reject the null hypothesis for $n = 5$ prospectors.

2. Increasing the number of prospectors to $n = 15$ leads to a rejection of $H_\circ$ in the one-sided case but failure to reject $H_\circ$ in the two-sided test.

3. Further increasing our sample size to $n = 30$ whilst still keeping the percentage of success the same leads to a firm rejection of both the one-sided and the two-sided null hypotheses.

In statistical terms, the increase in sample size has increased the 'power' of the test to reject the hypothesis test. A formal mathematical definition of this concept will be given in Section 5.4.

5.4   Type-I and type-II errors

There are four possible outcomes for a hypothesis test, which can be organised in a 2×2 table:

$H_\circ$ is ...	false	true
rejected	correct decision	Type-I error
not rejected	Type-II error	correct decision

To appreciate the difference between the two types of errors in this table, it may be useful to compare statistical hypothesis testing with a legal analogue. The jury in a court of justice faces a situation that is similar to that of a statistical hypothesis test. They are faced with a criminal who has either committed a crime or not, and they must decide whether to sentence this person or acquit them. In this case our 'null hypothesis' is that the accused is innocent. The jury then needs decide whether there is enough evidence to reject this hypothesis in favour of the alternative hypothesis, which is that the accused in guilty. Casting this process in a second 2×2 table:

the accused is ...	guilty	innocent
sentenced	correct decision	Type-I error
acquitted	Type-II error	correct decision

A **type-I error** is committed when a true null hypothesis test is erroneously rejected. This is akin to putting an innocent person in prison. For our gold prospecting example, this means that we reject the expert opinion of the geologist (whose assessment indicated a 2/3 chance of finding gold) when this geologist is in fact correct.

A **type-II error** is committed when we fail to reject a false null hypothesis. This is akin to letting a guilty person get away with a crime for lack of evidence. In the geological example, this means that we still trust the geological assessment despite it being wrong.

The probability of committing a type-I error is controlled by one parameter:

1. **The confidence level α**

   Using the customary value of $\alpha = 0.05$, there is a 5% chance of committing a type-I error. So even if the null hypothesis is correct, then we would still expect to reject it once every 20 times. This may be acceptable in geological studies, but probably not in the legal system! The principle that guilt must be proven "beyond any reasonable doubt" is akin to choosing a very small significance level ($\alpha \ll 0.05$). However it is never possible to enforce $\alpha = 0$, so it is inevitable that some innocent people are sentenced.

The probability of committing a type-II error (β) depends on two things:

1. **The degree to which $H_\circ$ is false**

   In our geological example, 40% of the prospectors found gold in their claim, so there clearly was some gold present in the area. Suppose that the actual abundance of gold in the prospecting area was indeed 40% ($p = 2/5$) instead of $p = 2/3$. Then the expected distribution of outcomes would follow a binomial distribution with $p = 2/5$. As shown in Section 5.2, the rejection region for the one-sided hypothesis test of $H_\circ : p = 2/3$ vs. $H_a : p < 2/3$ is $R = \{0, 1\}$. If the actual value for p is $2/5$, then the probability of observing a value for k that falls in this rejection region is $P(k < 2|n = 5, p = 2/5) = 0.34$. This is known as the **power** of the statistical test. The probability of committing a type-II error is given by:

$$\beta = 1 - \text{power} = 0.66 \qquad (5.7)$$

   Next, suppose that the true probability of finding gold is even lower, at $p = 1/5$. Under this alternative distribution, the probability of finding gold in $k \leq 1$ claims (and, hence, the power) increases to 74%. Therefore, the probability of committing a type-II error has dropped to only 26%.

   Finally, consider an end member situation in which the prospecting area does not contain any gold at all ($p = 0$). Then the probability of finding gold is obviously zero ($F(x = 2) = 0$). Under this trivial scenario, the power of the test is 100%, and the probability of committing a type-II error is zero.

   Plotting these results graphically:
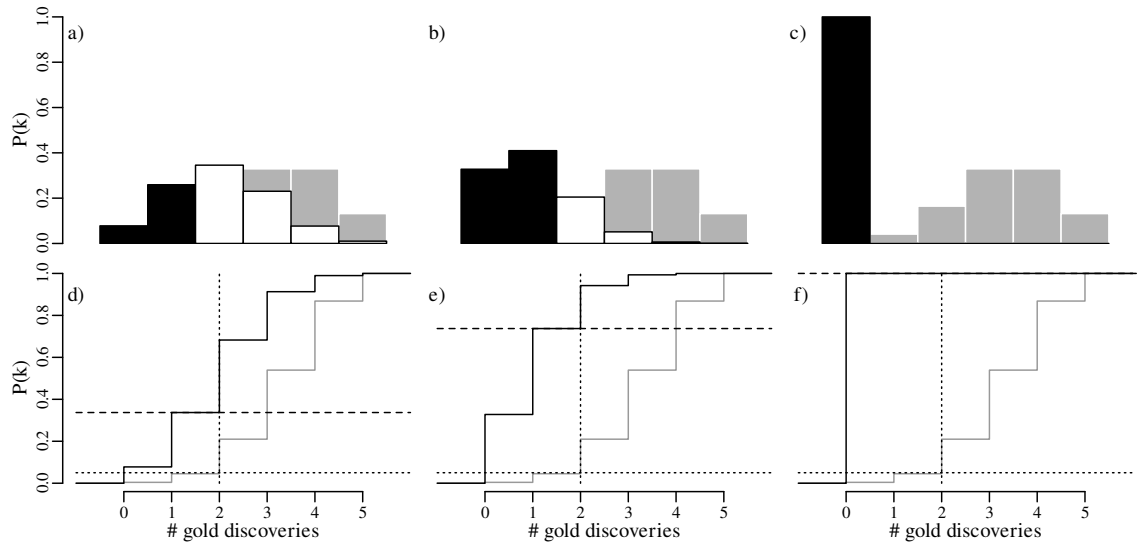
Figure 5.8: a) – c) PMFs of the binomial null distribution with $p = 2/3$ ($H_\circ$, grey) and alternative distributions with a) $p = 2/5$, b) $p = 1/5$ and c) $p = 0$. Sample size is $n = 5$ for all cases. d) – f) CDFs for the null distribution (grey) and the alternative distribution (black). The horizontal dotted lines mark $\alpha = 0.05$. Their intersections with the CDF of the null distribution are marked by vertical dotted lines. The areas to the left of these lines define the rejection region and are marked in black in the bar chart. The larger the sample size, the easier it is to reject $H_\circ$. The dashed horizontal lines mark the intersection of the rejection region with the CDF of the alternative distribution. These mark the power of the statistical test $(1 - \beta)$. Power clearly increases as the alternative distribution drifts away from the null distribution.

2. **Sample size**

The effect of sample size was already discussed in section 5.3. Comparing the predicted outcomes for the null hypothesis $H_\circ : p = 2/3$ to those of the alternative hypothesis $H_a : p = 2/5$ for sample sizes of $n = 5$, 15 and 30:
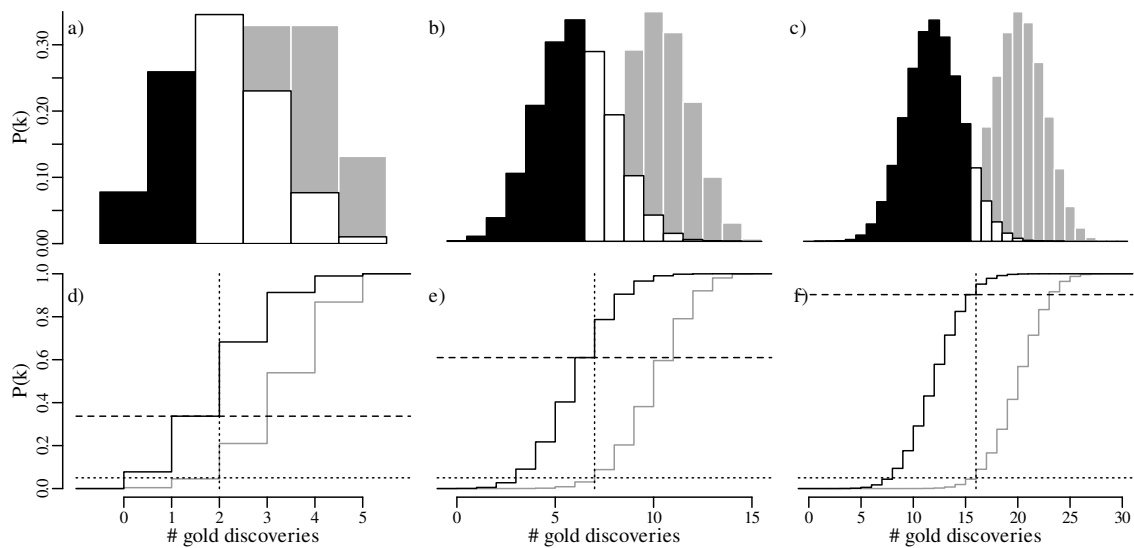
Figure 5.9: a) – c) PMFs of binomial distributions with $p = 2/3$ ($H_\circ$, grey) and $p = 2/5$ (H_a, black and white), for sample sizes of a) $n = 5$, b) $n = 15$ and c) $n = 30$. d) – f) CDFs for the null distribution (grey) and the alternative distribution (black). The horizontal dotted lines mark $\alpha = 0.05$. Their intersections with the CDF of the null distribution are marked by vertical dotted lines. The area to the left of these lines define the rejection region and are marked in black in the bar chart. The larger the sample size, the easier it is to reject $H_\circ$. The dashed horizontal lines mark the intersection of the rejection region with the CDF of the alternative distribution. These mark the power of the statistical test $(1 - \beta)$. Power clearly increases with sample size.

5.5 Pitfalls of statistical hypothesis testing

All hypotheses are wrong ... in some decimal place   – John Tukey (paraphrased)

All models are wrong, but some are useful   – George Box

Statistical tests provide a rigorous mathematical framework to assess the validity of a hypothesis. It is not difficult to see the appeal of this approach to scientists, including geologists. The scientific method is based on three simple steps:

1. Formulate a hypothesis.
2. Design an experiment to test said hypothesis.
3. Carry out the experiment and check to see if it matches the prediction.

It is rarely possible to prove scientific hypotheses. We can only *disprove* them. New knowledge is gained when the results of an experiment do not match the expectations. For example:

1. Hypothesis: Earth's lower mantle is made of olivine.
2. Test: Study the stability of olivine at lower mantle pressures (24-136 GPa).
3. Result: Olivine is not stable at lower mantle pressures.

From this experiment we still don't know what the lower mantle is made of. But at least we know that it is *not* olivine. Let us contrast this outcome with a second type of hypothesis:

1. Hypothesis: Earth's lower mantle is made of perovskite.
2. Test: Study the stability of perovskite at lower mantle pressures.
3. Result: Perovskite is stable at lower mantle pressures.

What have we learned from this experiment? Not much. We certainly did not prove that Earth's lower mantle consists of perovskite. There are lots of other minerals that are stable at lower mantle pressures. The only thing that we can say is that the null hypothesis has survived to live another day. The scientific method is strikingly similar to the way in which a statistical hypothesis test is carried out. A null hypothesis, like a scientific hypothesis, cannot be proven. It can only be disproved. Rejection of a null hypothesis is the best outcome, because it is the only outcome that teaches us something new.

It may seem natural to use the statistical approach to test scientific hypotheses. However doing so is not without dangers. To explain these dangers, let us go back to the power analysis

of Section 5.3. The power of our hypothesis test to reject $H_\circ : p = 2/3$ increases with sample size. A small sample may be sufficient to detect large deviations from the null hypothesis. Smaller deviations require larger sample sizes. But no matter how small the violation of the null hypothesis is, there always exists a sample size that is large enough to detect it.

Statistical tests are an effective way to evaluate mathematical hypotheses. They are less useful for scientific hypotheses. There is a profound difference between mathematical and scientific hypotheses. Whereas a mathematical hypothesis is either 'right' or 'wrong', scientific hypotheses are always 'somewhat wrong'. Considering our gold prospecting example, it would be unreasonable to expect that p is exactly equal to $2/3$, down to the 100th significant digit. Estimating the correct proportion of gold in the area to better than 10% would already be a remarkable achievement. Yet given enough data, there will always come a point where the geological prediction is disproved. Given a large enough dataset, even a 1% deviation from the predicted value would be yield an unacceptably small p-value:

Figure 5.10: The most likely outcome of a binomial experiment with $p = 2/3$ is $k/n = 2/3 (= 0.67)$. This figure shows the p-values of six slightly different outcomes for a range of different sample sizes. The horizontal dotted line marks the 5% significance level. No matter how little the observed k/n-ratio differs from $2/3$, this difference always becomes 'significant' given a large enough sample size.

As another example, suppose that we have analysed the mineralogical composition of two samples of sand that were collected 10cm apart on the same beach. Our null hypothesis is that the composition of the two samples is the same. Plausible though this hypothesis may seem, it will always be possible to reject it, given a large enough sample. Perhaps we need to classify a million grains from each sample, but at some point a 'statistically significant' difference will be found. Given a large enough sample, even the tiniest hydraulic sorting effect becomes detectable.

In conclusion, formalised hypothesis tests are of limited use in science. There are just two exceptions in which they do serve a useful purpose:

1. If a statistical test fails to reject the null hypothesis, then this indicates that the sample size is too small to find a meaningful effect. In this context the statistical test protects us against over-interpreting our data.

2. We can calculate the sample size that would be required to detect a pre-specified deviation from the null hypothesis. This approach is used in the pharmaceutical industry to test the efficacy of drugs. However this approach is seldom or never available to geologists.

5.6   Confidence intervals

The previous section showed that simple binary hypothesis tests are of limited use in geology. The question that is relevant to scientists is not so much whether a hypothesis is wrong, but rather *how wrong* it is. In the context of our gold prospecting example, there is little use in

testing whether p is exactly equal to $2/3$. In reality, p is *unknown*. It is far more useful to actually estimate p and to quantify the statistical uncertainty associated with it.

Equation 5.4 showed that, given k successful claims among n total claims, the *most likely* estimate for p is k/n. For example, if we observe $k = 2$ successful claims among $n = 5$ trials, then our best estimate for the abundance of gold is $\hat{p} = 2/5$. However this does not rule out other values. Let us now explore all possible values for p that are compatible with the observed $k = 2$ successful claims:

1. **p=0?** If $p = 0$, then the outcome that $k = 2$ would be impossible. So $p = 0$ can be ruled out.

2. **p=0.1?** The probability of observing $k \geq 2$ successful claims if $p = 0.1$ is given by:

$$P(k \geq 2|p = 0.1, n = 5) = \sum_{i=2}^{5} \binom{5}{i}(0.1)^i(0.9)^{n-i} = 0.081$$

   which is greater than $\alpha/2$. Consequently, the observation $k = 2$ falls outside the rejection region of the two-sided hypothesis test, and the proposed parameter value $p = 0.1$ is deemed compatible with the observation.

3. **p=2/5?** This is our maximum likelihood estimate for p. It is definitely possible that this is the true value.

4. **p=2/3?** Figures 5.8.b) and e) show that there is a greater than 2.5% chance of observing 2 or fewer successful claims if the true value of p is $2/3$. So $p = 2/3$ remains possible.

5. **p=0.9?** The probability of observing $k \leq 2$ successful claims if $p = 0.9$ is given by:

$$P(k \leq 2|p = 0.9, n = 5) = \sum_{i=0}^{2} \binom{5}{i}(0.9)^i(0.1)^{n-i} = 0.0086$$

   which is less than the $\alpha/2$ cutoff, and so $p = 0.9$ is *not* compatible with the observation.

6. **p=1?** If $p = 1$, then 100% of the claims should contain gold. This is incompatible with the observation that $k = 2$. Therefore $p = 1$ can be ruled out.

The set of all values of p that are compatible with the observed outcome $k = 2$ forms a **confidence interval**. Using an iterative process, it can be shown that the lower and upper limits of this interval are given by:

$$\text{C.I.}(p|k = 2, n = 5) = [0.053, 0.85]$$
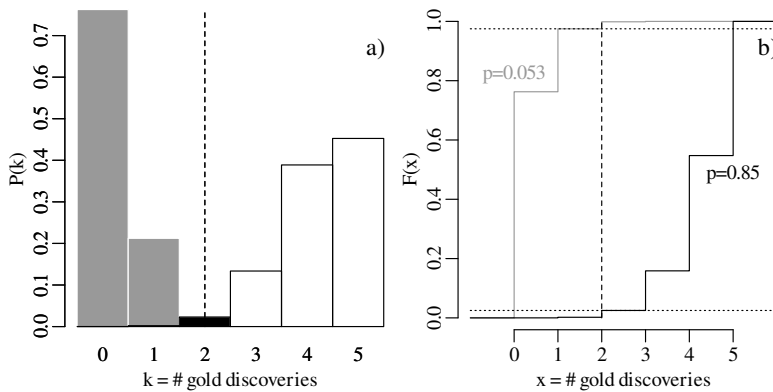
Figure 5.11: 95% confidence interval for the binomial parameter p given $k = 2$ successful claims (dashed lines) out of $n = 5$. The lower ($p = 0.053$, grey) and upper ($p = 0.85$) limits of the confidence interval are shown as a) PMFs and b) CDFs. Dotted horizontal lines mark the 0.025 and 0.975 confidence levels.

Repeating this procedure for a different result, for example $k = 4$, yields a different confidence interval, namely:

$$\text{C.I.}(p|k = 4, n = 5) = [0.284, 0.995]$$
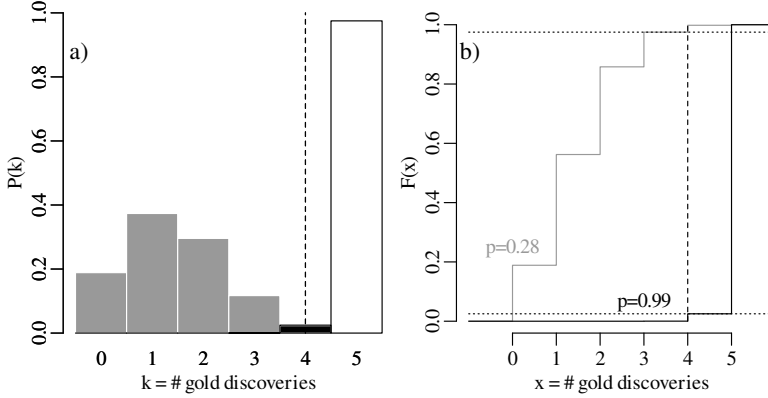
Figure 5.12: 95% confidence interval for the binomial parameter p given $k = 4$ successful claims (dashed lines) out of $n = 5$ trials. The lower ($p = 0.284$, grey) and upper ($p = 0.995$) limits of the confidence interval are shown as a) PMFs and b) CDFs. Dotted horizontal lines mark the 0.025 and 0.975 confidence levels.

What happens if we increase the sample size from $n = 5$ to $n = 30$, and the number of successful claims from $k = 2$ to $k = 12$? Then the maximum likelihood estimate remains $\hat{p} = 2/5$ as in our first example, but the 95% confidence interval narrows down to

$$\text{C.I.}(p|k = 12, n = 30) = [0.23, 0.59]$$
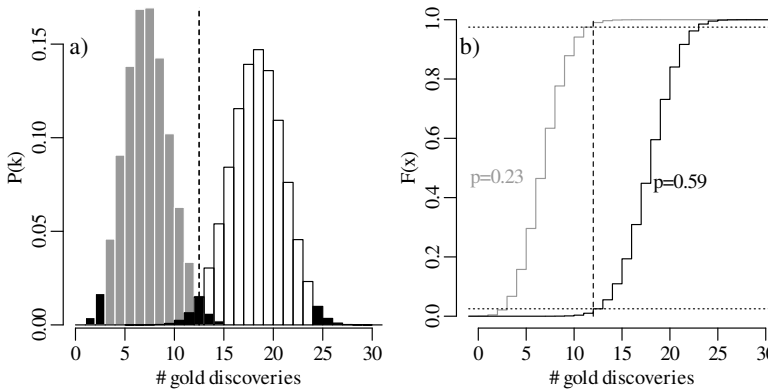
Figure 5.13: 95% confidence interval for the binomial parameter p given $k = 12$ successful claims (dashed lines) out of $n = 30$ trials. The lower ($p = 0.23$, grey) and upper ($p = 0.59$) limits of the confidence interval are shown as a) PMFs and b) CDFs. Dotted horizontal lines mark the 0.025 and 0.975 confidence levels.

To further explore the trend of decreasing confidence interval width with increasing sample size, let us evaluate the 95% confidence intervals for $\hat{p} = k/n$ estimates of 2/3 and 1/5, respectively, over a range of sample sizes between $n = 3$ and $n = 300$:
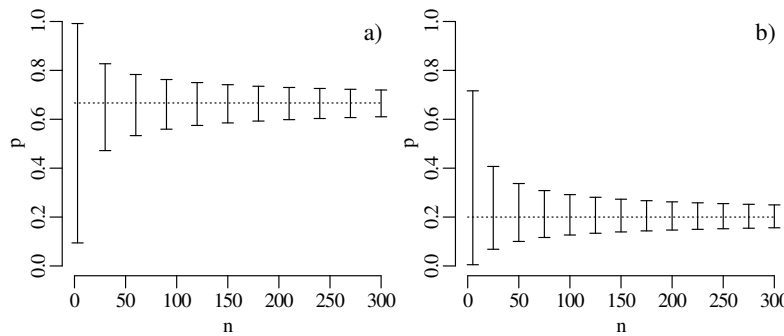
Figure 5.14: 95% confidence intervals for a) $\hat{p} = 2/3$ and b) $\hat{p} = 1/5$ for different sample sizes n. The horizontal dotted lines mark the maximum likelihood estimates. Note the asymmetry of the confidence intervals, which always fall within the 0 to 1 range of the parameter.

The confidence intervals become progressively narrower with increasing sample size. This reflects a steady improvement of the **precision** of our estimate for p with increasing sample size. In other words, large datasets are 'rewarded' with better precision.

Chapter 6

The Poisson distribution

Example 1

A *declustered* earthquake catalog[1] of the western United States contains 543 events of magnitude 5.0 and greater that occurred between 1917 and 2016:

Figure 6.1: The number of US earthquakes of magnitude 5.0 or greater per year between 1917 and 2016, with aftershocks removed.

The number of earthquakes in each bin forms a new dataset of 100 numbers, which has the following summary statistics:

Figure 6.2: Histogram of the earthquake counts shown in Figure 6.1.

mean: 5.43
standard deviation: 2.50
variance: 6.24

Note how the mean and the variance of this dataset are similar.

Example 2

5000 grains of sand have been mounted in an uncovered thin section and imaged with a scanning electron microscope (SEM). The SEM has identified the locations of zircon ($ZrSiO_4$)

---

[1]Mueller, C.S., 2019. Earthquake catalogs for the USGS national seismic hazard maps. *Seismological Research Letters*, 90(1), pp.251-261.

crystals that are suitable for geochronological dating:

Figure 6.3: Point-counting results for zircon in sand. Black squares mark zircons and grey circles other minerals.

Counting the number of zircons per graticule:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
4	2	6	5	1	5	1	2	4	4	4	1	2
3	2	5	4	5	1	4	4	2	2	2	2	5
2	2	2	5	1	3	3	6	4	3	2	1	5
1	3	2	2	4	5	3	7	7	5	9	5	4
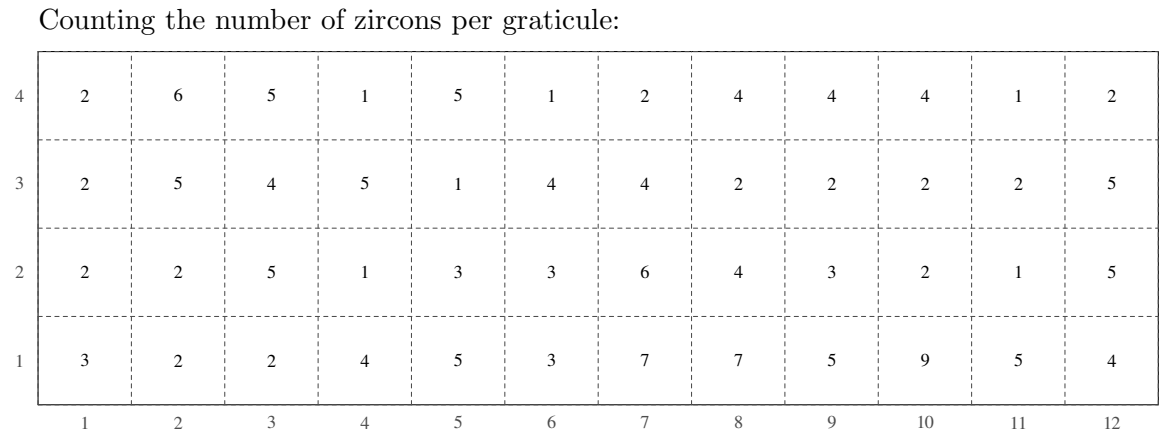
Figure 6.4: The number of zircons counted in each graticule of Figure 6.3.

And tallying the number of zircons per graticule in a histogram:

Figure 6.5: Histogram of the zircon counts shown in Figure 6.4.

mean: **3.50**
standard deviation: 1.85
variance: 3.40

Like the earthquake example, also this zircon example is characterised by similar values for the mean and the variance. This turns out to be a characteristic property of the Poisson distribution.

6.1 Probability mass function

The Poisson distribution describes the frequency of *rare events* in time or space. It predicts the likelihood of observing the number of 'successes' k given the long term average of successes λ:

$$P(k|\lambda) = \frac{\lambda^k e^{-\lambda}}{k!} \tag{6.1}$$

Thus the Poisson distribution is characterised by a single parameter, λ. Exploring the distribution for different values of this parameter:
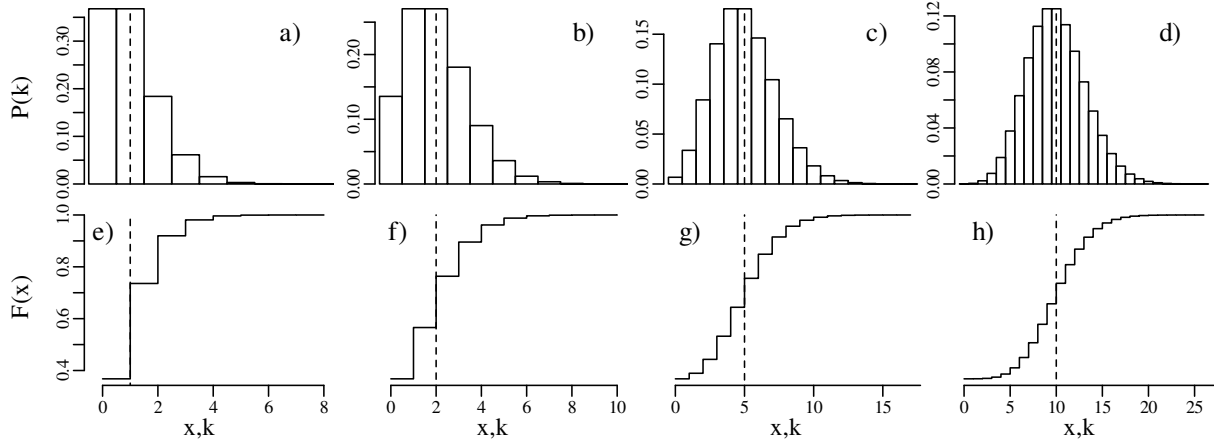
Figure 6.6: PMF (a – d) and CDF (e – h) of the Poisson distribution for $\lambda = 1$ (a, e); $\lambda = 2$ (b, f); $\lambda = 5$ (c, g); and $\lambda = 10$ (d, h); as marked by the dashed line.

The Poisson distribution is positively skewed but becomes more symmetric with increasing λ. In this respect it is similar to the binomial distribution (Figure 5.8). In fact the Poisson distribution is closely related to the binomial distribution. Recall that the binomial distribution depends on two parameters: n and p. It can be shown that the binomial distribution converges to the Poisson distribution with increasing n and decreasing p. In the limit of $n \to \infty$ and $p \to 0$, the binomial distribution simplifies to a Poisson distribution with $\lambda = np$. The next table illustrates this by evaluating the probability of observing $k \leq 2$ successes under a binomial distribution with $np = 5$ for different values of n and p:

n	10	20	50	100	200	500	1000	2000	5000	10000
p	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	0.025	0.01	0.005	0.0025	0.001	0.0005
$P(k \leq 2)$	0.0547	0.0913	0.112	0.118	0.121	0.1234	0.124	0.1243	0.1245	0.1246

Table 6.1: Binomial probability of 2 successes after n trials for different values of p, where $np = 5$. In the limit of $n \to \infty$ and $p \to 0$, the cumulative probability $P(k \leq 2)$ converges to a value of 0.1246. This equals the probability of 2 successes under a Poisson distribution with $\lambda = 5$.

The Poisson distribution expresses the probability of a given number of events occurring in a fixed interval of time or space if these events occur with a **constant mean rate** and are **independent** of the time since the last event. Examples of Poisson variables include the number of

1. people killed by lightning per year;

2. mutations in DNA per generation;

3. radioactive disintegrations per unit time;

4. mass extinctions per 100 million years.

The number of earthquakes including aftershocks and the number of floods per year are *not* Poisson variables, because they are clustered in time.

6.2   Parameter estimation

The Poisson distribution has one unknown parameter, λ. This parameter can be estimated using the method of maximum likelihood, just like the parameter p of the binomial distribution (section 5.1). As before, the likelihood function is obtained by swapping the parameter (λ) and the data (k):

$$\mathcal{L}(\lambda|k) = \frac{\lambda^k e^{-\lambda}}{k!} \tag{6.2}$$

And as before, we can estimate λ by taking the derivative of $\mathcal{L}$ with respect to it and setting this derivative to zero:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \lambda} = 0 \tag{6.3}$$

Alternatively, we can also maximise the **log-likelihood**:

$$\mathcal{LL}(\lambda|k) = k \ln[\lambda] - \lambda - \sum_{i=1}^{k} i \tag{6.4}$$

and set its derivative w.r.t. λ to zero:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{LL}}{\partial \lambda} = 0 \tag{6.5}$$

Both approaches give exactly the same result because the value of λ that minimises $\mathcal{L}$ also minimises $\mathcal{LL}$. Thus:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{LL}}{\partial \lambda} = \frac{k}{\lambda} - 1 = 0 \tag{6.6}$$

which leads to

$$\frac{k}{\lambda} = 1 \tag{6.7}$$

and, hence

$$\lambda = k \tag{6.8}$$

In other words, the measurement itself equals the 'most likely' estimate for the parameter. However the maximum likelihood estimate is not the only option. Other values of λ may also be compatible with k, and vice versa. The next section explores which values of k are reconsilable with a given value of λ.

6.3 Hypothesis tests

Hypothesis testing for Poisson variables proceeds in exactly the same way as for binomial variables (section 5.2). For example:

1. consider the following one-sided pair of hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**) $\qquad\qquad \lambda = 3.5$

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): $\qquad \lambda > 3.5$

2. Like for the binomial case, the test statistic is the number of 'successes'. Suppose that we have observed $k = 9$ successes.

3. The null distribution of the test statistic is a Poisson distribution with $\lambda = 3.5$:

k	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$P(T = k)$	0.030	0.106	0.185	0.216	0.189	0.132	0.077	0.038	0.017	*0.007*	0.002
$P(T \geq k)$	1.000	0.970	0.864	0.679	0.463	0.275	0.142	0.065	0.027	*0.010*	0.003

4. We will use the same significance level as always, i.e. $\alpha = 0.05$.

5. Marking the rejection region in bold:

k	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	**8**	**9**	**10**
$P(T = k)$	0.030	0.106	0.185	0.216	0.189	0.132	0.077	0.038	0.017	*0.007*	0.002
$P(T \geq k)$	1.000	0.970	0.864	0.679	0.463	0.275	0.142	0.065	**0.027**	***0.010***	**0.003**

6. The rejection region is $R = \{8, 9, 10, \ldots, \infty\}$, which includes our observation $k = 9$. Therefore, our null hypothesis is rejected.

Displaying the rejection region graphically:
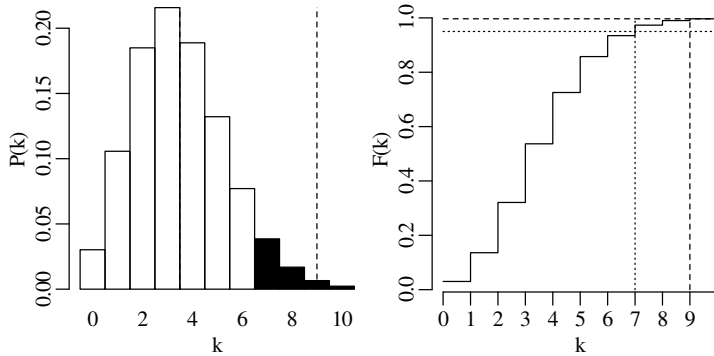
Figure 6.7: a) PMF and b) CDF of a Poissonian null distribution with $\lambda = 3.5$. The rejection region is marked in black on a). The horizontal dotted line in b) shows the $1 - \alpha = 0.95$ mark. The horizontal dashed line in the CDF marks the cumulative probability for $k = 9$, which is greater than the 0.95 cutoff. Therefore the one-sided null hypothesis is rejected.

6.4 Multiple testing

The observant reader may have noticed that the hypothesis test of section 6.3 referred to the zircon counting example of Figures 6.3 – 6.4. The average number of observations per bin in this example was 3.5. And therefore, according to section 6.2, the maximum likelihood estimate for λ is 3.5 as well. According to our hypothesis test, a value of $k = 9$ is incompatible with a parameter value of $\lambda = 3.5$. Yet the observant reader may also have noticed that a value of $k = 9$ appears in the dataset (Figure 6.4)!

Does this mean that our data do not follow a Poisson distribution?

The answer is no. The apparent contradiction between the point-counting data and the hypothesis test is a result of multiple hypothesis testing. To understand this problem, we need to go back to the multiplicative rule of page 27. The probability of incurring a type-I error is α. Therefore, the probability of not making a type-I error $1 - \alpha = 0.95$. But this is only true for one test. If we perform two tests, then the probability of twice avoiding a type-I error is $(1 - \alpha)^2 = 0.9025$. If we do N tests, then the probability of not making a type-I error reduces to $(1 - \alpha)^N$. Hence, the probability of making a type-I error increases to $1 - (1 - \alpha)^N$. Figure 6.4 contains $4 \times 12 = 48$ graticules. Therefore, the likelihood of a type-I error is not α but $1 - (1 - \alpha)^{48} = 0.915$.

In other words, there is a 91.5% chance of committing a type-I error when performing 48 simultaneous tests. One way to address this issue is to reduce the confidence level of the hypothesis test from α to α/N, where N equals the number of tests. This is called a **Bonferroni correction**. In the case of our zircon example, the confidence level would be reduced from $\alpha = 0.05$ to $\alpha = 0.05/48 = 0.00104$ $(1 - \alpha = 0.99896)$. It turns out that the 99.896% percentile of a Poisson distribution with parameter $\lambda = 3.5$ is 10. So the observed outcome of $k = 9$ zircons in one of the 48 graticules is in fact not in contradiction with the null hypothesis, but falls within the range of expected values.

Multiple testing is a common problem in science, and a frequent source of spurious scientific 'discoveries'. For example, consider a dataset of 50 chemical elements measured in 100 samples. Suppose that you test the degree of correlation between each of these elements and the gold content of the samples. Then it is inevitable that one of the elements will yield a 'statistically significant' result. Without a multi-comparison correction, this result will likely be spurious. In that case, repetition of the same experiment on 100 new samples would not show the same correlation. Poorly conducted experiments of this kind are called statistical *fishing expeditions*, *data dredging* or *p-hacking*. Sadly they are quite common in the geological literature, and it is good to keep a sceptical eye out for them.

6.5   Confidence intervals

The construction of confidence intervals for the Poisson parameter λ proceeds in pretty much the same way as it did for the binomial parameter p. Let us construct a 95% confidence interval for λ given the observation that 5 magnitude 5.0 or greater earthquakes occurred in the US in 2016.

The lower limit of a 95% confidence interval for the number of earthquakes per year is marked by the value of λ that is more than 2.5% likely to produce an observation of $k = 5$ or greater. This turns out to be $\lambda = 1.62$. The upper limit of the confidence interval is marked by the value of λ that is more than 97.5% likely to produce an observation of $k = 5$ or smaller. This value is $\lambda = 11.7$. Hence, 95% confidence interval is $[1.62, 11.7]$. Note that this interval includes the average of all 100 preceding years.
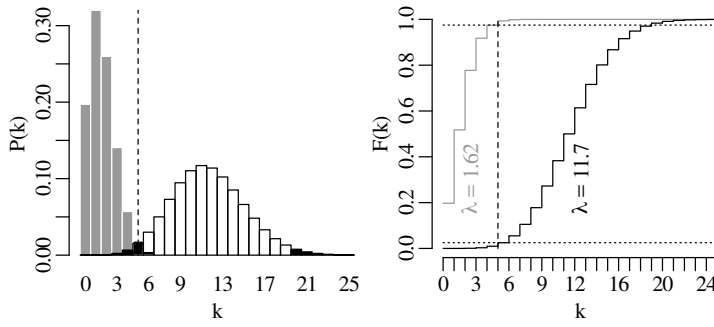
Figure 6.8: 95% confidence interval for the Poisson parameter λ given a single observation of $k = 5$ events. The lower ($p = 1.62$, grey) and upper ($p = 11.67$) limits of the confidence interval are shown as a) PMFs and c) CDFs. Dotted horizontal lines mark the 0.025 and 0.975 confidence levels.

Repeating the exercise for all observations in Figure 6.1 yields the following set of 100 confidence intervals for λ:

Figure 6.9: 95% Poisson confidence intervals for all the years in the declustered earthquake database. The horizontal dotted line marks the average of all the years ($\hat{\lambda} = 5.43$). 'outliers' are marked in black.

Three years (1941, 1954 and 1984) stand out because their 95% confidence intervals do not overlap with the long term average value of 5.43. Does this mean that the earthquake statistics did not fit the Poisson distribution during those years? The answer to this question is no, for the same reasons as given in section 6.4. When a large number of confidence intervals are drawn, it is inevitable that some of these do not include with the true parameter value. In fact it would be suspicious if all the error bars overlapped with the long term average.

With a confidence level of $\alpha = 0.05$, there should be a 5% chance of committing a type-I error. Therefore, we would expect 5% of the samples to be rejected, and 5% of the error bars to exclude the true parameter value. The observed number of rejected samples (3/100) is in line with those expectations.

Chapter 7

The normal distribution

The binomial (chapter 5 and Poisson (chapter 6) distributions are just two of countless possible distributions. Here are a few examples of other distributions that are relevant to Earth scientists:

– **the negative binomial distribution** models the number of successes (or failures) in a sequence of Bernoulli trials before a specified number of failures (or successes) occurs. For example, it describes the number of dry holes x that are drilled before r petroleum discoveries are made given a probability of discovery p:

$$P(x|r,p) = \binom{r + x - 1}{x}(1 - p)^x p^r \tag{7.1}$$

– **the multinomial distribution** is an extension of the binomial distribution where more than two outcomes are possible. For example, it describes the point counts of multiple minerals in a thin section. Let $p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_m$ be the relative proportions of m minerals (where $\sum_{i=1}^{m} p_i = 1$), and let $k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_m$ be their respective counts in the thin section (where $\sum_{i=1}^{m} k_i = n$). Then:

$$P(k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_m | p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_m) = \frac{n!}{\prod_{i=1}^{m} k_i!} \prod_{i=1}^{m} p_i^{k_i} \tag{7.2}$$

The binomial and Poisson distributions are **univariate** distributions that aim to describe one-dimensional datasets. However the multinomial distribution is an example of a **multivariate** probability distribution, which describes multi-dimensional datasets.

– **the uniform distribution** is the simplest example of a **continuous distribution**. For any number x between the minimum a and maximum b:

$$f(x|a,b) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{b-a} & \text{if } a \leq x \leq b \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \tag{7.3}$$

x does not have to be an integer but is free to take any decimal value. Therefore, $f(x|a,b)$ is not referred to as a probability mass function (PMF) but as a **probability density function** (PDF). Whereas PMFs are represented by the letter P, we use the letter f to represent PDFs. This is because the probability of observing any particular value x

is actually zero. For continuous variables, probabilities require integration between two values. For example:

$$P(c \leq x \leq d) = \int\limits_{c}^{d} f(x|a,b)dx \tag{7.4}$$

The cumulative density function (CDF) of continuous variable is also obtained by integration rather than summation:

$$P(X \leq x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < a \\ \int_{a}^{x} \frac{1}{b-a} dX = \frac{x-a}{b-a} & \text{if } a \leq x \leq b \\ 1 & \text{if } x > b \end{cases} \tag{7.5}$$

Earthquakes follow a uniform distribution across the day, because they are equally likely to occur at 3:27:05 in the morning as they are at 17:02:58 in the afternoon, say.
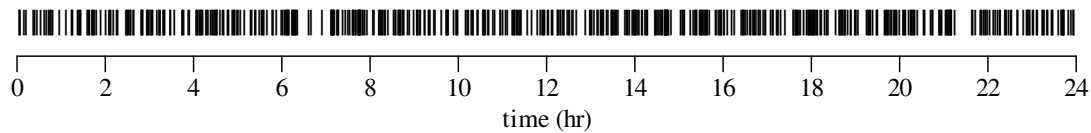
Figure 7.1: The time of day for all 543 magnitude 5.0 or greater earthquakes of Figure 6.1.

We will not discuss these, or most other distributions, in any detail. Instead, we will focus our attention on one distribution, the Gaussian distribution, which is so common that it is also known as the **normal** distribution, implying that all other distributions are 'abnormal'.

7.1   The Central Limit Theorem

Let us revisit the Old Faithful dataset of Figure 2.15.
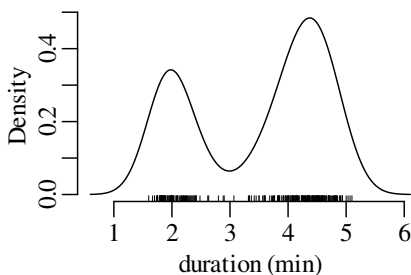
Figure 7.2: The KDE and rug plot of 272 Old Faithful eruption durations is the marginal distribution of Figure 2.15. This distribution has two modes at 2 and 4.5 minutes.

The next three figures derive three new distributions by taking the sum of n randomly selected values from the geyser durations:
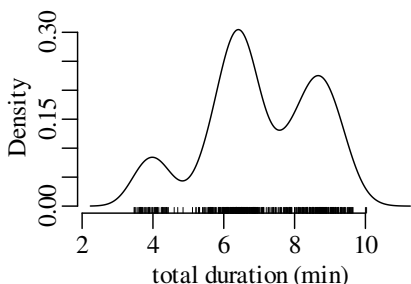
Figure 7.3: Collect $n = 2$ randomly chosen events from the original dasaset of geyser eruptions with replacement and add their durations together. Repeat to create a new dataset of $N = 500$ values. The KDE of this distribution has not two but three modes at 4 ($= 2 \times 2$), 6.5 ($= 2 + 4.5$), and 9 ($= 2 \times 4.5$) minutes, respectively.

Figure 7.4: Collect $n = 3$ randomly chosen events from the geyser eruption dataset and add their durations together. Repeat $N = 500$ times to create a third dataset. The KDE of this distributions has four visible modes, including peaks at 6 ($= 3 \times 2$), 8.5 ($= 2 \times 2 + 4.5$), 11 ($= 2 + 2 \times 4.5$) and 13.5 ($= 3 \times 4.5$) minutes.

Figure 7.5: Taking $N = 500$ samples of $n = 10$ randomly selected eruptions and summing their durations produces a fourth dataset whose KDE has a single mode with symmetric tails towards lower and higher values.

Figure 7.5 has the characteristic *bell shape* of a Gaussian distribution, which is described by the following PDF:

$$f(x|\mu, \sigma) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left[-\frac{(x - \mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right] \tag{7.6}$$

where μ is the **mean** and σ is the **standard deviation**. It can be mathematically proven that the *sum* of n randomly selected values converges to a Gaussian distribution, provided that n is large enough. This convergence is guaranteed *regardless of the distribution of the original data*. This mathematical law is called the **Central Limit Theorem**.

The Gaussian distribution is known as the normal distribution because it naturally arises from *additive processes*, which are very common in nature. It is easy to create normally distributed distributions in a laboratory environment. There even exists a machine that generates normally distributed numbers:
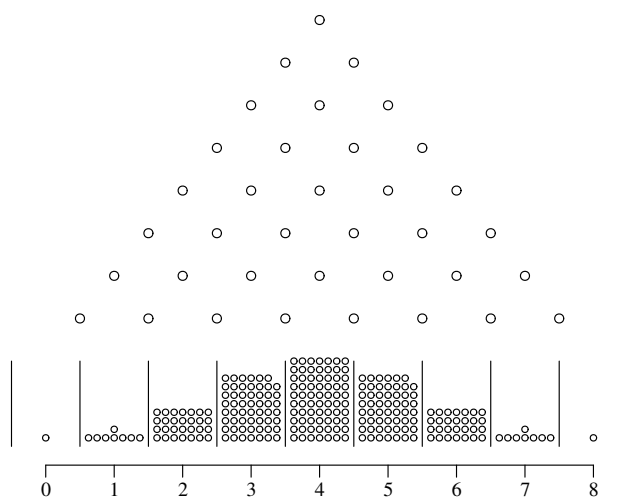
Figure 7.6: Galton's bean machine is a mechanical device that simulates additive physical processes. It consists of a triangular arrangement of pegs above a linear array of containers. When a bead enters the machine from the top, it bounces off the pegs on its way down to the containers. The probability of bouncing to the left is the same as the probability of bouncing to the right. After n bounces, the bead lands in one of the containers, forming a bell shaped (binomial) distribution. With increasing n, this distribution converges to a Gaussian form.

Additive processes are very common in physics. For example, when a drop of ink disperses in a volume of water, the ink molecules spread by bouncing off the water molecules. This *Brownian motion* creates a Gaussian distribution, in which most ink molecules remain near the original location (μ), with wide tails in other directions.

7.2   The multivariate normal distribution

The binomial, Poisson, negative binomial, multinomial, uniform and univariate normal distributions are but a small selection from an infinite space of probability distributions. These particular distributions were given a specific name because they commonly occur in nature. However the majority of probability distributions do not fall into a specific parametric category. For example, the bivariate distribution of Old Faithful eruption gaps and durations (Figure 2.15) is not really captured by any of the aforementioned distributions. In fact, it is quite easy to invent one's own distributions. Here are four examples of such creations in two-dimensional data space:
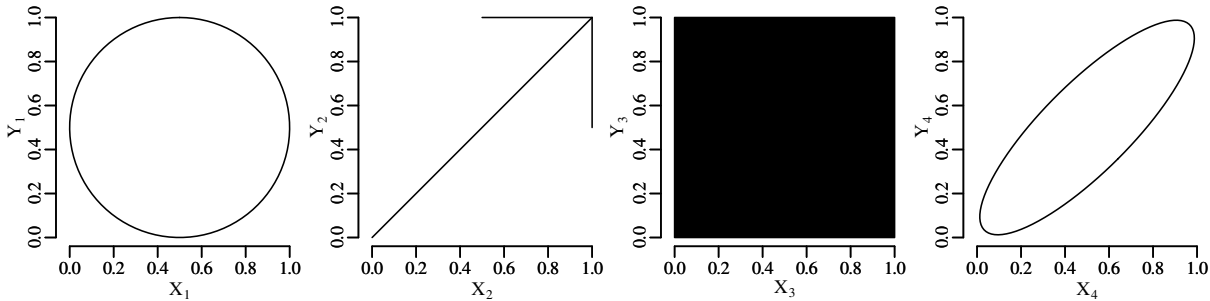
Figure 7.7: Four synthetic, bivariate, continuous distributions, defined by black areas and lines. White areas are excluded from the distributions.

Let us collect $n = 100$ random (X, Y) samples from these four distributions and plot them as four scatter plots:
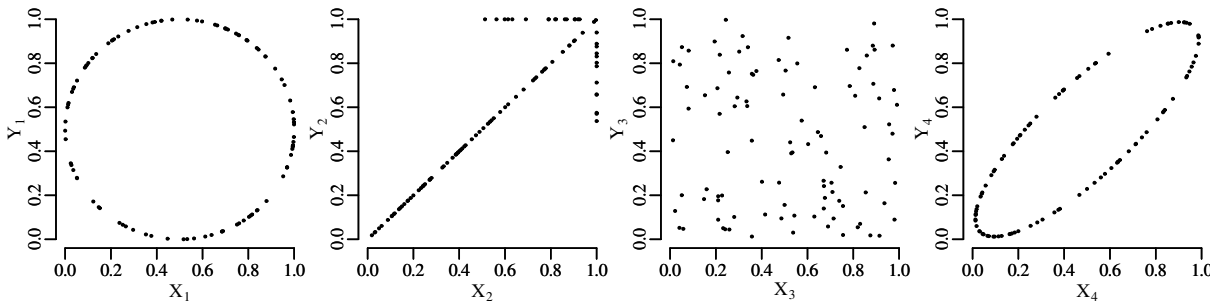
Figure 7.8: It is easy to recognise the probability distributions of Figure 7.7 in the scatter plots of $n = 100$ random points selected from them.

Next, we can calculate the sum of all the sampled points in each of the four panels in Figure 7.8. This gives rise to four new pairs of coordinates. Repeating this experiment $N = 200$ times and plotting the four resulting datasets as scatter plots:
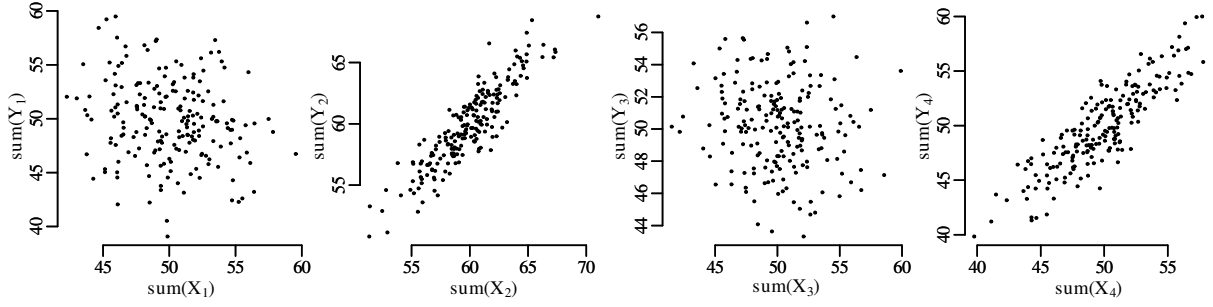
Figure 7.9: Four scatter plots with $N = 200$ points, each of which represents the sum of a random sample of $n = 100$ points drawn from Figure 7.7.

Despite the completely different appearance of the four parent distributions (Figure 7.7) and samples (Figure 7.8), the distributions of their sums (Figure 7.9) all look very similar. They consist of an elliptical point cloud that is dense in the middle and thins out towards the edges. The density of the points per unit area is accurately described by a bivariate Gaussian distribution:

$$f(x, y | \mu_x, \mu_y, \sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_{x,y}) = \frac{\exp\left(-\begin{bmatrix}(x - \mu_x) & (y - \mu_y)\end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \sigma_x^2 & \sigma_{x,y} \\ \sigma_{x,y} & \sigma_y^2 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} x - \mu_x \\ y - \mu_y \end{bmatrix} \Big/ 2\right)}{2\pi \sqrt{\left| \begin{matrix} \sigma_x^2 & \sigma_{x,y} \\ \sigma_{x,y} & \sigma_y^2 \end{matrix} \right|}} \qquad (7.7)$$

This matrix expression is completely described by five parameters: the means μ_x and μ_y, the standard deviations σ_x and σ_y, and the covariance $\sigma_{x,y}$. One-dimensional projections of the data on the X- and Y-axis yield two univariate Gaussian distributions.
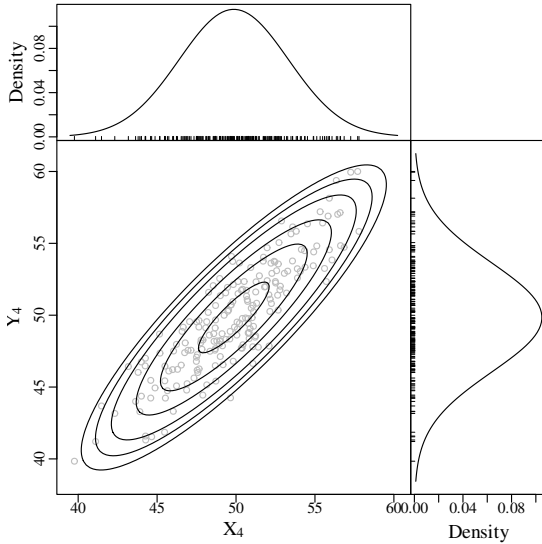
Figure 7.10: The main panel shows population 4 of Figure 7.9 as grey circles, and the best fittin bivariate Gaussian distribution as contours. The side panels show the marginal distributions of the X- and Y-variable, which are both univariate Gaussian. The means and standard deviations of the marginal distributions equal the means and the standard deviations of the bivariate distribution. The bivariate distribution has a fifth parameter, the covariance $\sigma_{x,y}$, which controls the angle at which the elliptical contours are rotated relative to the axes of the diagram. The significance of these parameters is further explored in Section 7.3.

7.3 Properties

The univariate normal distribution is completely controlled by two parameters:

1. the **mean** μ controls the **location** of the distribution. Because the normal distribution is unimodal and symmetric, the mean also equals the median and the mode.

2. the **standard deviation** σ quantifies the **dispersion** of the distribution.

Figure 7.11: PDFs of the univariate normal distribution for different values of μ and σ. μ controls the position and σ the width of the distribution. By definition, the area under the PDF always remains the same (i.e. $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} f(x)\, dx = 1$).

The interval from $\mu - \sigma$ to $\mu + \sigma$ covers 68.27% of the area under the PDF, and the interval from $\mu - 2\sigma$ to $\mu + 2\sigma$ covers 95.45%. Conversely 95% of the area under the normal PDF is contained within an interval of $\mu \pm 1.96\sigma$.

Figure 7.12: PDF (a) and CDF (b) of the normal distribution. The $\mu \pm \sigma$ and $\mu \pm 2\sigma$ intervals cover $\sim$68% and $\sim$95% of the distribution, respectively.

3. the **covariance** $\sigma_{x,y}$ controls the degree of **correlation** between two variables (x, y) in a bivariate normal distribution.

Figure 7.13: The standard deviations σ_x and σ_y, and covariance $\sigma_{x,y}$ control the shape and dispersion of the bivariate normal distribution.

The 1σ *area* around the mean of a bivariate normal distribution only covers 39% of the probability instead of 68% for the univariate normal distribution, and the 2σ interval covers 86% of the probability instead of the 95% of the univariate distribution.

7.4 Parameter estimation

μ and σ are *unknown* but can be *estimated* from the data. Just like the binomial parameter p (Section 5.1) and the Poisson parameter λ (Section 6.2), this can be done using the method of maximum likelihood. Given n data points $\{x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\}$, and using the multiplication rule, we can formulate the normal likelihood function as

$$\mathcal{L}(\mu, \sigma | x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i | \mu, \sigma) \tag{7.8}$$

μ and σ can be estimated by maximising the likelihood or, equivalently, the log-likelihood:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{LL}(\mu, \sigma | x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n) &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \ln\left[f(x_i|\mu, \sigma)\right] \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} -\ln[\sigma] - \frac{1}{2}\ln[2\pi] - \frac{(x_i - \mu)^2}{2\sigma^2} \end{aligned} \tag{7.9}$$

Taking the derivative of $\mathcal{LL}$ with respect to μ and setting it to zero:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \mathcal{LL}}{\partial \mu} &= -\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{x_i - \mu}{\sigma^2} = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow n\mu - \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \hat{\mu} = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \end{aligned} \tag{7.10}$$

which is the same as Equation 3.1. Using the same strategy to estimate σ:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \mathcal{LL}}{\partial \sigma} &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} -\frac{1}{\sigma} + \frac{(x_i - \mu)^2}{\sigma^3} = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{(x_i - \mu)^2}{\sigma^3} = \frac{n}{\sigma} \\ &\Rightarrow \hat{\sigma} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i - \mu)^2} \end{aligned} \tag{7.11}$$

which is *almost* the same as the formula for the standard deviation that we saw in Section 3.2 (Equation 3.3):

$$s[x] = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1}\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i - \bar{x})^2} \tag{7.12}$$

There are just two differences between Equations 3.3/7.12 and Equation 7.11:

1. Equation 7.11 uses the population mean μ, whereas Equation 3.3 uses the sample mean $\bar{x}$.

2. Equation 7.11 divides the sum of the squared differences between the measurements and the mean by n, whereas Equation 3.3 divides it by $(n-1)$.

The two differences are related to each other. The subtraction of 1 from n is called the **Bessel correction** and accounts for the fact that by using an estimate of the mean $(\bar{x})$, rather than the true value of the mean (μ), we introduce an additional source of uncertainty in the estimate of the standard deviation. This additional uncertainty is accounted for by subtracting one **degree of freedom** from the model fit.

Finally, for multivariate normal datasets, we can show that (proof omitted):

$$\hat{\sigma}_{x,y} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{n}(x_i - \mu_x)(y_i - \mu_y) \tag{7.13}$$

or, if μ_x and μ_y are unknown and must be estimated from the data as well:

$$s[x,y] = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{n-1}(x_i - \bar{x})(y_i - \bar{y}) \tag{7.14}$$

Chapter 8

Error propagation

Suppose that the extinction of the dinosaurs has been dated at 65 Ma in one field location, and a meteorite impact has been dated at 64 Ma elsewhere. These two numbers are effectively meaningless in the absence of an estimate of precision. Taken at face value, the dates imply that the meteorite impact took place 1 million years after the mass extinction, which rules out a causal relationship between the two events. However, if the statistical uncertainty of the age estimates is significantly greater than 1 Myr, then such of a causal relationship remains plausible. There are two aspects of analytical uncertainty:

– **accuracy** is the closeness of a statistical estimate to its true (but unknown) value.

– **precision** is the closeness of multiple measurements to each other.
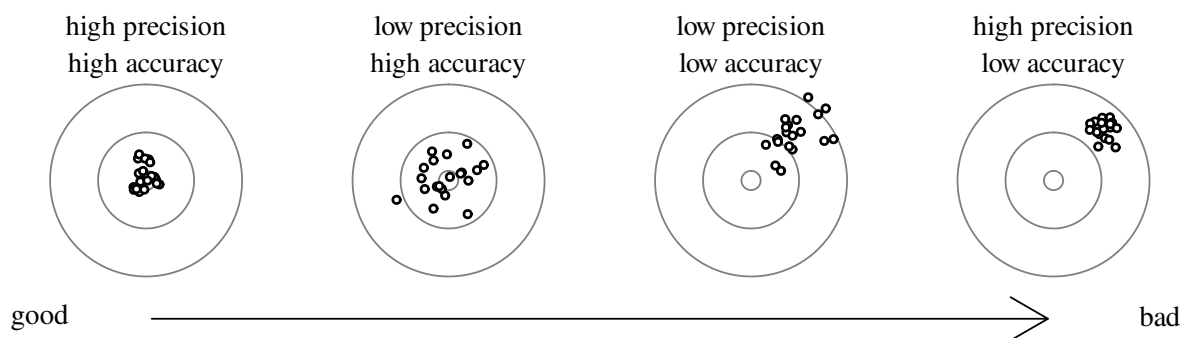
Figure 8.1: Darts board illustration of accuracy (closeness to the centre) and precision (closeness of the measurements). The best case scenario combines high precision with high accuracy. The worst case scenario combines high precision with low accuracy. This is the worst possible situation because the high precision gives false confidence in the data.

Accuracy can be assessed by analysing *reference materials* (or 'secondary standards') whose true parameter values are known through independent means. This procedure involves little statistics and won't be discussed further in this chapter. Quantifying precision is a more involved process that is also known as **error propagation**. This procedure will be discussed in some detail in the following sections.

8.1 Linear approximation

Suppose that the geological age or any other physical quantity (z) is calculated as a function (g) of some measurements (x):

$$z = g(x) \qquad (8.1)$$

and suppose that replicate measurements of x (x_i, for $i = 1...n$) *follow a normal distribution* with mean $\bar{x}$ and standard deviation $s[x]$. Then these values can be used to estimate $s[z]$, the standard deviation of the calculated value z. If the function g is (approximately) linear in the vicinity of $\bar{x}$, then small deviations ($\bar{x} - x_i$) of the measured parameter x_i from the mean value $\bar{x}$ are proportional to small deviations ($\bar{z} - z_i$) of the estimated quantity z from the mean value $\bar{z} = g(\bar{x})$.

Recall the definition of the sample standard deviation and variance (Equation 7.12):

$$s[z]^2 \equiv \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (z_i - \bar{z})^2 \tag{8.2}$$

Let $\partial z / \partial x$ be the slope of the function g with respect to the measurements x, then:

$$(z_i - \bar{z}) \approx \frac{\partial z}{\partial x}(x_i - \bar{x}) \tag{8.3}$$

Figure 8.2: Error propagation of two linear functions, g_1 (black line) and g_2 (grey line). The input data $\{x_i\}$ are normally distributed around some average value $\bar{x}$. Error propagation estimates the dispersion of the inferred quantity z_i from the dispersion of the measurements x_i. Deviations ($x_i - \bar{x}$) from the average x-value are reduced (for function g_1) or magnified (for function g_2) depending on the slope of the functions, resulting in deviations of the dependent variable that are smaller ($z_{i1} - \bar{z}_1$) or greater ($z_{i2} - \bar{z}_i$) than ($x_i - \bar{x}$).

Plugging Equation 8.3 into 8.2, we obtain:

$$
\begin{aligned}
s[z]^2 &\approx \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left[(x_i - \bar{x}) \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \right]^2 \\
&= \left[\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \right]^2 \left[\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_i - \bar{x})^2 \right] = \left[\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \right]^2 s[x]^2 \\
\Rightarrow s[z] &= \left| \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \right| s[x]
\end{aligned}
\tag{8.4}
$$

$s[z]$ is the **standard error** of z, i.e. the *estimated* standard deviation of the inferred quantity z.

Equation 8.4 is the general equation for the propagation of uncertainty with one variable. Next, let us move on to multivariate problems. Suppose that the our estimated quantity (z) is calculated as a function (g) of two measurements (x and y):

$$z = g(x, y) \tag{8.5}$$

and further suppose that x and y follow a bivariate normal distribution (Equation 7.7), then μ_x, μ_y, σ_x, σ_y and $\sigma_{x,y}$ can all be estimated (as $\bar{x}, \bar{y}, s[x], s[y]$ and $s[x,y]$) from the input data ($\{x_i, y_i\}$, for $i = 1...n$). These values can then be used to infer $s[z]$, the standard error of z, in exactly the same way as for the one dimensional case.

Differentiating g with respect to x and y:

$$z_i - \overline{z} \approx (x_i - \overline{x})\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + (y_i - \overline{y})\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \tag{8.6}$$

Plugging Equation 8.6 into Equation 8.2:

$$s[z]^2 \approx \frac{1}{n-1}\sum_{i=1}^{n}\left[(x_i - \overline{x})\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} + (y_i - \overline{y})\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right]^2 \tag{8.7}$$

After some rearranging (similar the derivation of Equation 8.4), this leads to:

$$s[z]^2 \approx s[x]^2\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\right)^2 + s[y]^2\left(\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}\right)^2 + 2\ s[x,y]\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}\frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \tag{8.8}$$

This is the general equation for the propagation of uncertainty with two variables, which can also be written in a matrix form:

$$s[z]^2 \approx \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} s[x]^2 & s[x,y] \\ s[x,y] & s[y]^2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \\ \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix} \tag{8.9}$$

where the innermost matrix is known as the *variance-covariance* matrix and the outermost matrix (and its transpose) as the *Jacobian matrix*. The advantage of the matrix formulation is that it can easily be scaled up to three or more dimensions.
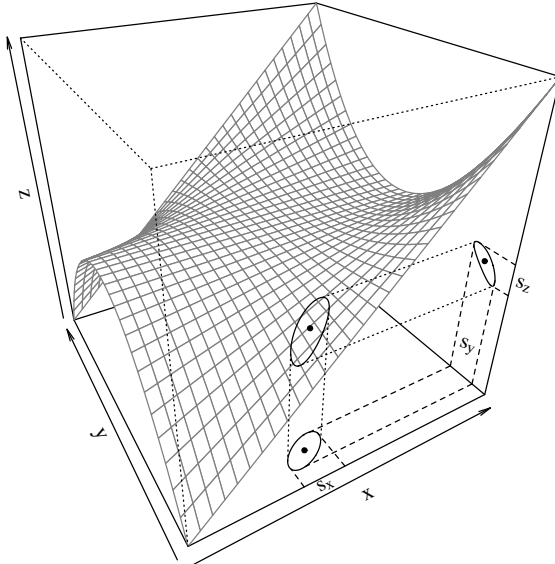
Figure 8.3: Error propagation of a bivariate function $z = g(x,y)$. The uncertainty in z is *approximately* proportional to the slope of the surface g w.r.t. the measurements x and y. If the curvature of the 3D surface is minor relative to the uncertainties, then said surface can be *locally* approximated by a plane. Using such a linear approximation, the size of the error ellipses ($s[x]$, $s[y]$) around the mean measurements (black dots) linearly scales with corresponding deviations in the inferred quantity ($s[z]$).

8.2   Examples

Equation 8.8/8.9 is the generic error propagation formula. This section will apply this formula to some common mathematical functions. It will use the following notation:

– $a, b, c, \ldots$ are constants, i.e. values that are known without uncertainty ($s[a] = s[b] = s[c] = 0$);

– x and y are measurements whose uncertainties ($s[x]$ and $s[y]$) were estimated from replicates;

– $z = g(x, y)$ is the estimated quantity.

For example, $z = x/2 + y^3$ can be written as $z = ax + y^b$, where $a = 1/2$ and $b = 3$.

1. **addition:**
$$z = a + bx + cy$$

Taking the derivatives of z with respect to x and y:

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = b \text{ and } \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = c$$

Plugging these into Equation 8.8:

$$s[z]^2 = b^2 s[x]^2 + c^2 s[y]^2 + 2bc \ s[x, y] \tag{8.10}$$

If x and y are uncorrelated (i.e., $s[x, y] = 0$), then the variance of the sum equals the sum of the variances.

2. **subtraction:**
$$z = ax - by$$

The partial derivatives of z with respect to x and y are

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = a \text{ and } \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = -b$$

Plugging these into Equation 8.8:

$$s[z]^2 = a^2 s[x]^2 + b^2 s[y]^2 - 2ab \ s[x, y] \tag{8.11}$$

Note that, if x and y are uncorrelated, then Equations 8.10 and 8.11 are identical.

3. **multiplication:**
$$z = axy$$

The partial derivatives are

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = ay \text{ and } \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = ax$$

Plugging these into Equation 8.8:

$$s[z]^2 = (ay)^2 s[x]^2 + (ax)^2 s[y]^2 + 2(ay)(ax) \ s[x, y]$$

Dividing both sides of this equation by $z^2 = (axy)^2$:

$$\left(\frac{s[z]}{z}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{ay}{axy}s[x]\right)^2 + \left(\frac{ax}{axy}s[y]\right)^2 + 2\left(\frac{ay}{axy}\right)\left(\frac{ax}{axy}\right)s[x,y]$$

which simplifies to:

$$\left(\frac{s[z]}{z}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{s[x]}{x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{s[y]}{y}\right)^2 + 2\frac{s[x,y]}{xy} \tag{8.12}$$

$(s[x]/x)$ and $(s[y]/y)$ represent the *relative standard deviations* of x and y. These are also known as the **coefficients of variation** (CoV). If x and y are uncorrelated, then the squared CoVs of a product equals the sum of the squared CoVs.

4. **division:**

$$z = a\frac{x}{y}$$

The partial derivatives are

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{a}{y} \text{ and } \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = -\frac{ax}{y^2}$$

Plugging these into Equation 8.8:

$$s[z]^2 = \left(\frac{a}{y}\right)^2 s[x]^2 + \left(-\frac{ax}{y^2}\right)^2 s[y]^2 + 2\left(\frac{a}{y}\right)\left(-\frac{ax}{y^2}\right)s[x,y]$$

Dividing both sides of this equation by $z^2 = (ax/y)^2$:

$$s[z]^2 = \left(\frac{a}{y}\frac{y}{ax}\right)^2 s[x]^2 + \left(-\frac{ax}{y^2}\frac{y}{ax}\right)^2 s[y]^2 + 2\left(\frac{a}{y}\frac{y}{ax}\right)\left(-\frac{ax}{y^2}\frac{y}{ax}\right)s[x,y]$$

which simplifies to:

$$\left(\frac{s[z]}{z}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{s[x]}{x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{s[y]}{y}\right)^2 - 2\frac{s[x,y]}{xy} \tag{8.13}$$

If x and y are uncorrelated, then the uncertainty of the quotient (Equation 8.13) equals the uncertainty of the product (Equation 8.12).

5. **exponentiation:**

$$z = ae^{bx}$$

The partial derivative of z w.r.t. x is

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = abe^{bx}$$

Plugging this into Equation 8.8:

$$s[z]^2 = \left(abe^{bx}\right)^2 s[x]^2$$

Dividing both sides by $z^2 = \left(ae^{bx}\right)^2$:

$$\left(\frac{s[z]}{z}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{abe^{bx}}{ae^{bx}} s[x]\right)^2$$

which simplifies to

$$\left(\frac{s[z]}{z}\right)^2 = b^2 s[x]^2 \tag{8.14}$$

6. **logarithms:**

$$z = a \ln[bx]$$

The partial derivative of z w.r.t. x is

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{a}{x}$$

Plugging this into Equation 8.8:

$$s[z]^2 = a^2 \left(\frac{s[x]}{x}\right)^2 \tag{8.15}$$

7. **power:**

$$z = ax^b$$

The partial derivative of z w.r.t. x is

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = abx^{b-1}$$

Plugging this into Equation 8.8:

$$s[z]^2 = \left(ab\ x^{b-1}\right)^2 s[x]^2$$

Dividing both sides by $z = ax^b$:

$$\left(\frac{s[z]}{z}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{abx^{b-1}}{ax^b} s[x]\right)^2$$

which simplifies to

$$\left(\frac{s[z]}{z}\right)^2 = b^2 \left(\frac{s[x]}{x}\right)^2 \tag{8.16}$$

8. **other:**

Error propagation for more complicated functions can either be derived from Equation 8.8 directly, or can be done with Equations 8.10–8.16 using the **chain rule**. For example, consider the following equation:

$$d = d_\circ + v_\circ t + gt^2 \tag{8.17}$$

which describes the distance d travelled by an object as a function of time t, where $d_\circ$ is the position at $t = 0$, $v_\circ$ is the velocity at $t = 0$, and g is the acceleration. Although Equation 8.17 does not directly fit into any of the formulations that we have derived thus far, it is easy to define two new functions that do. Let

$$x \equiv d_\circ + v_\circ t \tag{8.18}$$

and

$$y \equiv gt^2 \tag{8.19}$$

then Equation 8.18 matches with the formula for addition (Equation 8.10):

$$z = a + bx + cy$$

where $a \equiv d_\circ$, $b \equiv v_\circ$, $x \equiv t$, $c \equiv 0$ and y is undefined. Then uncertainty propagation of Equation 8.18 using Equation 8.10 gives:

$$s[x]^2 = (v_\circ s[t])^2 \tag{8.20}$$

Similarly, Equation 8.19 matches with the formula for powering (Equation 8.16):

$$z = ax^b$$

where $a \equiv g$, $b \equiv 2$ and $x \equiv t$. Applying Equation 8.16 to Equation 8.19 yields:

$$\left(\frac{s[y]}{y}\right)^2 = 2^2 \left(\frac{s[t]}{t}\right)^2 \Rightarrow s[y]^2 = \left(2gt^2 \frac{s[t]}{t}\right)^2 = (2gts[t])^2 \tag{8.21}$$

Combining Equations 8.18 and 8.19 turns Equation 8.17 into a simple sum:

$$d = x + y$$

whose uncertainty can be propagated with Equation 8.10:

$$s[d]^2 = s[x]^2 + s[y]^2$$

Substituting Equation 8.20 for $s[x]^2$ and Equation 8.21 for $s[y]^2$:

$$s[d]^2 = (v_\circ s[t])^2 + (2gts[t])^2$$

which leads to the following expression for the uncertainty of d:

$$s[d] = \sqrt{(v_\circ s[t])^2 + (2gts[t])^2} \tag{8.22}$$

To illustrate the use of this formula, suppose that $d_\circ = 0$ m, $v_\circ = 10$ m/s and $g = 9.81$ m/s^2. Further suppose that we measure the time t with a watch that has a $1/10^{\text{th}}$ of a second precision[1] ($s[t] = 0.1$ s). Then we can predict how far the object will have travelled after 5 seconds:

$$d = 0 \text{ m} + 10\frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}} \times 5 \text{ s} + 9.81\frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2} \times (5 \text{ s})^2 = 295.25 \text{ m} \tag{8.23}$$

Using Equation 8.22, the uncertainty[2] of d is given by:

$$s[d] = \sqrt{\left(10\frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}} \times 0.1 \text{ s}\right)^2 + 4\left(9.81\frac{\text{m}}{\text{s}^2}\right)^2 (5 \text{ s})^2 (0.1 \text{ s})^2} = 9.861 \text{ m} \tag{8.24}$$

Thus the predicted displacement after 5 seconds can be reported as 295.250±9.861 m, or as 295.2±9.9 m if we **round** the estimate to two **significant digits**. Note how Equations 8.23 and 8.24 specifies the units of all the variables. Checking that these units are balanced is good practice that avoids arithmetic errors.

8.3   Standard deviation vs. standard error

As defined in Section 8.1, the standard error is the estimated standard deviation of some derived quantity obtained by error propagation. The mean of set of numbers is an example of such a derived quantity, and its estimated uncertainty is called the standard error of the mean. Let $\{x_1, x_2, \ldots x_n\}$ be n measurements of some quantity x, and let $\bar{x}$ be its mean (Equation 3.1):

$$\bar{x} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{x_i}{n} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i$$

Applying the error propagation formula for a sum (Equation 8.10):

$$s[\bar{x}]^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(\frac{s[x_i]}{n}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^2 \sum_{i=1}^{n} s[x_i]^2$$

If all the x_is were drawn from the same normal distribution with standard deviation $s[x]$, then

$$s[\bar{x}]^2 = \left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^2 \sum_{i=1}^{n} s[x]^2 = n\left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^2 s[x]^2$$

which simplifies to

$$s[\bar{x}] = \frac{s[x]}{\sqrt{n}} \tag{8.25}$$

---

[1]Here precision refers not to the magnitude of normally distributed noise, but to the resolution of the clock.

[2]Here the uncertainty is not a standard error in the traditional sense of the word, but we can still use the same error propagation methods to compute it.

The standard error of the mean monotonically decreases with the square root of sample size. In other words, we can arbitrarily increase the *precision* of our analytical data by acquiring more data. However, it is important to note that the same is generally not the case for the *accuracy* of those data (Figure 8.1). To illustrate the effect of the square root rule, consider the statistics of human height as an example. The distribution of the heights of adult people is approximately normal with a mean of 165 cm and a standard deviation of 10 cm. There about 5 billion adult humans on the planet. Averaging their heights should produce a value of 165 cm with a standard error of $10/\sqrt{5 \times 10^9} = 1.4 \times 10^{-4}$ cm. So even though there is a lot of dispersion among the heights of humans, the standard error of the mean is only 1.5 *microns*.

8.4 Fisher Information

We used the method of maximum likelihood to estimate the parameters of the binomial (section 5.1), Poisson (section 6.2) and normal (section 7.4) distributions. An extension of the same method can be used to estimate the standard errors of the parameters without any other information. Let $\hat{z}$ be the maximum likelihood estimate of some parameter z. We can approximate the log-likelihood with a second order Taylor series in the vicinity of $\hat{z}$:

$$\mathcal{LL}(z) \approx \mathcal{LL}(\hat{z}) + \frac{\partial \mathcal{LL}}{\partial z}(z - \hat{z}) + \frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{LL}}{\partial z^2}(z - \hat{z})^2$$

By definition, $\partial \mathcal{LL}/\partial z = 0$ at $\hat{z}$. Therefore, the likelihood ($\mathcal{L}(z) = \exp[\mathcal{LL}(z)]$) is proportional to:

$$\mathcal{L}(z) \propto \exp\left[\frac{1}{2}\frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{LL}}{\partial z^2}(z - \hat{z})^2\right]$$

which can also be written as:

$$\mathcal{L}(z) \propto \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\frac{(z - \hat{z})^2}{-\frac{1}{\frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{LL}}{\partial z^2}}}\right]$$

This equation fits the functional form of the normal distribution (Equation 7.6):

$$\mathcal{L}(z) \propto \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}\frac{(z - \hat{z})^2}{\sigma[z]^2}\right]$$

which leads to

$$\sigma[z]^2 = \frac{1}{-\frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{LL}}{\partial z^2}} \tag{8.26}$$

$-\frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{LL}}{\partial z^2}$ is known as the **Fisher Information**. Equation 8.26 can be generalised to multiple dimensions:

$$\Sigma = -\mathcal{H}^{-1} \tag{8.27}$$

where Σ is the covariance matrix and $(\mathcal{H})^{-1}$ is the inverse of the ('Hessian') matrix of second derivatives of the log-likelihood function with respect to the parameters.

To illustrate the usefulness of Equation 8.26, let us apply it to the Poisson distribution. Recalling the log-likelihood function (Equation 6.4) and denoting the maximum likelihood estimate of the parameter by $\hat{\lambda}$:

$$\mathcal{LL}(\hat{\lambda}|k) = k \log[\hat{\lambda}] - \hat{\lambda} - \sum_{i=1}^{k} i$$

Taking the second derivative of $\mathcal{LL}$ with respect to $\hat{\lambda}$:

$$\frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{LL}}{\partial \hat{\lambda}^2} = -\frac{k}{\hat{\lambda}^2} \tag{8.28}$$

Plugging Equation 8.28 into 8.26:

$$\sigma[\hat{\lambda}]^2 = \frac{\hat{\lambda}^2}{k}$$

Recalling that $\hat{\lambda} = k$ (Equation 6.8), we get

$$\sigma[\hat{\lambda}]^2 = \hat{\lambda} \tag{8.29}$$

Thus we have proven that the variance of a Poisson variable equals its mean, which was already shown empirically in Chapter 6.

Chapter 9

Comparing distributions

The previous chapters have introduced a plethora of parametric distributions that allow us to test hypotheses and assess the precision of experimental results. However these inferences are only as strong as the assumptions on which they are based. For example, chapter 5 used a binomial distribution to assess the occurrence of gold in a prospecting area, assuming that the gold was randomly distributed across all the claims. And chapter 6 used a Poisson distribution to model earthquakes, assuming that the earthquake catalog was free of clusters and that all aftershocks had been removed from it. This chapter will introduce some strategies to test these assumptions, both graphically and numerically.

9.1   Q-Q plots

As the name suggests, a quantile-quantile or Q-Q plot is a graphical method for comparing two probability distributions by plotting their quantiles against each other. Q-Q plots set out the quantiles of a sample against those of a theoretical distribution, or against the quantiles of another sample. For example, comparing the Old Faithful eruption duration dataset (Figure 7.2) to a normal distribution:

Figure 9.1: Quantile-quantile (Q-Q) plot of Old Faithful eruption durations. The horizontal axis marks the theoretical quantiles of a normal distribution with the same mean and standard deviation as the data. The vertical axis marks the quantiles of the actual data. If the two distributions being compared are similar, the points in the Q-Q plot will approximately lie on the line y = x. Otherwise they will not. In this example the distribution of eruption durations clearly does not follow a normal distribution.

Figure 9.2: Q-Q plot of the dataset of 500 sums of $n = 2$ randomly selected eruption durations shown in Figure 7.3. The resulting tri-modal distribution plots closer to the 1:1 line than the original dataset of Figure 9.1 but is still far from normal.

Figure 9.3: Q-Q plot of the dataset of 500 sums of $n = 10$ randomly selected eruption durations shown in Figure 7.5. The data plot very close to the 1:1 line, visually confirming that they follow a normal distribution. The sample distribution only deviates from the theoretical distribution at the most extreme quantiles. This indicates that the sample distribution has heavier tails than the normal distribution. This phenomenon will be discussed further in the next section. Increasing n further would remove this effect near the tails and bring the sample distribution even closer to the normal distribution.

Q-Q plots cannot only be used to compare sample distributions with theoretically predicted parametric distributions, but also to compare one sample with another. For example:
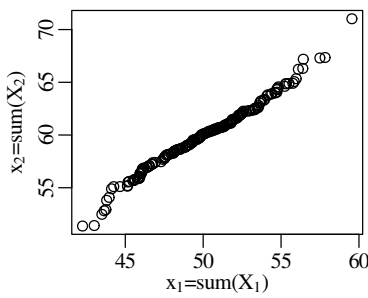
Figure 9.4:   Q-Q plot comparing datasets $x_1 = \text{sum}(X_1)$ and $x_2 = \text{sum}(X_2)$ of Figure 7.9. Even though the two datasets have markedly different means ($\bar{x}_1 = 50.0$ and $\bar{x}_2 = 59.9$) and slightly different standard deviations ($s[x_1] = 3.3$ and $s[x_2] = 3.1$), the quantiles of the two datasets plot along a straight line. This means that their distributions are identical in shape.

9.2   The t-test

The Q-Q plot in Figure 9.4 compared two samples that were normally distributed with different means. However it may not be clear if the difference between the means is statistically significant or not. Before we address this problem, let us first look at a related, but slightly simpler problem. Consider the density of 5 gold coins as an example:

coin #	1	2	3	4	5
density (g/cm^3)	19.07	19.09	19.17	19.18	19.31

The density of pure gold is 19.30 g/cm^3. We might ask ourselves the question if the five coins are made of pure gold, or if they consist of a mixture with a less dense metal? To answer this question, we assume that the sample mean $\bar{x}$ follows a normal distribution with mean μ and standard deviation $\sigma/\sqrt{n}$ (following the same derivation as Equation 8.25). Thus, the parameter

$$z = \frac{\bar{x} - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} \tag{9.1}$$

follows a **standard normal distribution** whose mean is zero and whose standard deviation is one. As we have seen in section 7.4, σ is unknown but can be estimated by the sample standard deviation $s[x]$. We can then replace Equation 9.1 with a new parameter

$$t = \frac{\bar{x} - \mu}{s[x]/\sqrt{n}} \tag{9.2}$$

However t does not follow a normal distribution but a **Student t-distribution** with $(n-1)$ **degrees of freedom** where the $(n-1)$ plays a similar role as the Bessel correction of section 7.4. It accounts for the 'double use' of the data to estimate both the mean and the standard deviation

of the data. The t-distribution forms the basis of a statistical test that follows the same sequence of steps as in sections 5.2 and 6.3.

1. Formulate two hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**) $\qquad\qquad\qquad \mu = 19.30$

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): $\qquad \mu < 19.30$

2. Calculate the following test statistic:

$$t = \frac{\bar{x} - \mu_\circ}{s[x]/\sqrt{n}} \qquad (9.3)$$

   where $\bar{x} = 19.164$, $\mu_\circ = 19.30$, $s[x] = 0.0948$, and $n = 5$ so that $t = -3.2091$.

3. Under $H_\circ$, Equation 9.3 follows a Student t-distribution with 4 degrees of freedom. Tabulating some key quantiles of this distribution:

t	-3.75	*-3.2091*	-2.78	-2.13	-1.53	-0.74	0	0.74	1.53	2.13	2.78	3.75
$P(T \leq t)$	0.01	*0.0163*	0.025	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99

   where the observed value is marked in italics.

4. We will use the usual confidence level $\alpha = 0.05$.

5. Marking the rejection region ($P(T < t) < \alpha$) in bold:

t	**-3.75**	***-3.2091***	**-2.78**	**-2.13**	-1.53	-0.74	0	0.74	1.53	2.13	2.78	3.75
$P(T \leq t)$	**0.01**	***0.0163***	**0.025**	**0.05**	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99

   The one-sided rejection region consists of all $t < -2.10$.

6. Because the observed value of $t = -3.2091$ falls inside the rejection region, the null hypothesis is rejected.

We therefore conclude that the coins are not made of pure gold. Here is a graphical representation of this test:

Figure 9.5: a) PDF and b) CDF of a t-distribution with 4 degrees of freedom. The one-sided rejection region (for $\alpha = 0.05$) is marked in black. The vertical dashed line marks the observed value of $t = -3.2091$. This line plots in the rejection region, leading to the conclusion that $\mu < 19.30$ g/cm^3. The horizontal dashed line marks the p-value ($0.0163 < \alpha$).
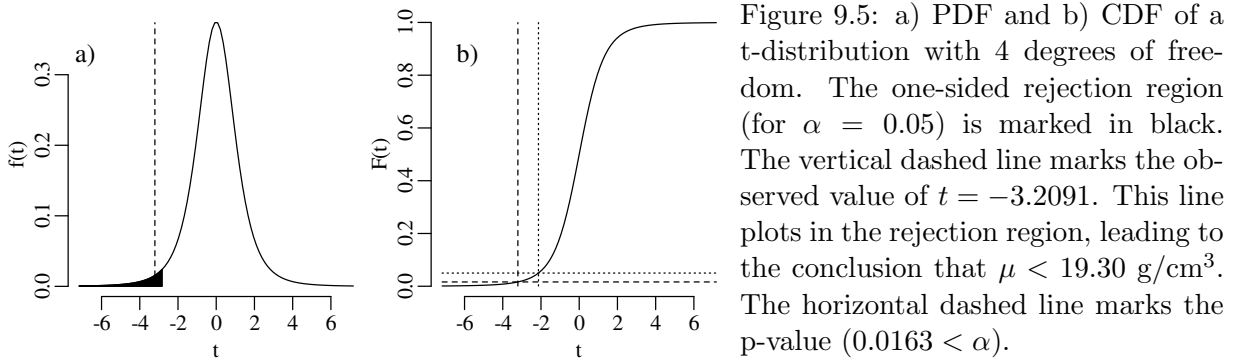
The comparison between the mean of a sample (coin densities) and a particular value (19.30 g/cm^3) is called a **one sample t-test**. If we want to compare the mean densities of two samples, then that would require a **two sample t-test**. For example, consider the following two collections of coins:

coin #	1	2	3	4	5
density (1st collection)	19.07	19.09	19.17	19.18	19.31
density (2nd collection)	19.17	19.30	19.31	19.32	

The average densities of collection 1 and 2 are 19.164 g/cm^3 and 19.275 g/cm^3, respectively. If we assume that the two collections have the *same variance*, then we can test whether the difference between the two means is significant or not.

1. Formulate two hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**) $\mu_1 = \mu_2$

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): $\mu_1 \neq \mu_2$

2. Calculate the following test statistic:

$$t = \frac{\bar{x}_1 - \bar{x}_2}{s_p \sqrt{\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2}}} \tag{9.4}$$

where $\bar{x}_1 = 19.164$, $n_1 = 5$, $\bar{x}_2 = 19.275$, $n_2 = 4$, and s_p is the *pooled* standard deviation:

$$s_p = \sqrt{\frac{(n_1 - 1)s[x_1]^2 + (n_2 - 1)s[x_2]^2}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}} \tag{9.5}$$

in which $s[x_1] = 0.095$ and $s[x_2] = 0.070$ are the standard deviations of the first and second coin collection, respectively. Plugging the data into equations 9.4 and 9.5 yields $t = -2.014$.

3. Under $H_\circ$, Equation 9.4 follows a Student t-distribution with $(n_1 + n_2 - 2)$ degrees of freedom[1]. Tabulating some key quantiles of the t-distribution with 7 degrees of freedom:

t	-3.00	-2.36	*-2.014*	-1.89	-1.41	-0.71	0.00	0.71	1.41	1.89	2.36	3.00
$P(T \leq t)$	0.01	0.025	*0.042*	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99
$P(T \geq t)$	0.99	0.975	*0.958*	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	0.025	0.01

where the observed value is marked in italics.

4. We will use the conventional confidence level $\alpha = 0.05$. But because we are carrying out a two-sided test, we will have two cutoff regions marked by $\alpha/2$ and $(1 - \alpha/2)$, respectively.

5. Marking the rejection regions in bold:

t	**-3.00**	**-2.36**	*-2.014*	-1.89	-1.41	-0.71	0.00	0.71	1.41	1.89	**2.36**	**3.00**
$P(T \leq t)$	**0.01**	**0.025**	*0.042*	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99
$P(T \geq t)$	0.99	0.975	*0.958*	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	**0.025**	**0.01**

The two-sided rejection region consists of all $t < -2.40$ and all $t > 2.40$.

6. Because the observed value of $t = -2.014$ falls outside the rejection region, we cannot reject the null hypothesis.

---

[1]Two degrees of freedom have been removed because we estimated two parameters from the data: $\bar{x}_1$ and $\bar{x}_2$
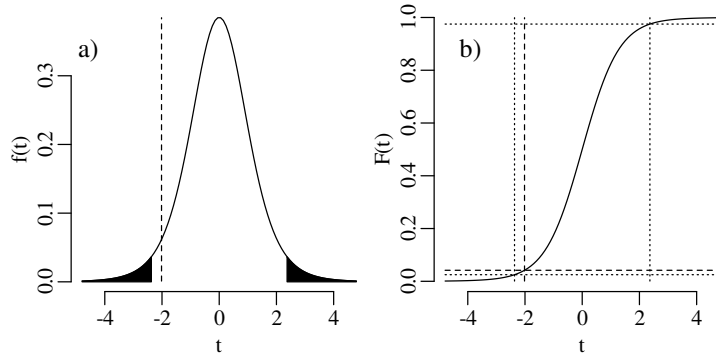
Figure 9.6: a) PDF and b) CDF of a t-distribution with 7 degrees of freedom. The two-sided rejection region (for $\alpha = 0.05$) is marked in black. The vertical dashed line marks the observed value of $t = -2.014$ and plots outside the rejection region. Therefore the test does not allow us to conclude that $\mu_1 \neq \mu_2$.

9.3 Confidence intervals

Section 9.2 introduced a powerful way to test whether the mean of a sample was equal to a particular value, or to the mean of another sample. However, section 5.5 showed that formalised tests such as the t-test have limited practical value. Provided that the sample is large enough, its mean will nearly always be 'significantly' different than that of another sample. Suppose that we were to average the densities of not five but five millions coins, then it would be extremely unlikely for the mean to be exactly 19.30 g/cm^3. With a sample size of five million the power of the t-test would be such that even trace amounts of a lighter contaminant would have a detectable effect on the density.

Instead of asking ourselves whether the coins have the same density as gold, it is more useful to know what the mean density actually is, and to construct a confidence interval for it. We could then use this information to learn something about the composition of the gold coins. To construct a confidence interval for the mean, we follow a similar procedure as laid out in sections 5.6 and 6.5. Let us use the first set of coins as an example, and recall that the one sample t-statistic is defined as (Equation 9.3):

$$t = \frac{\bar{x} - \mu}{s[x]/\sqrt{n}}$$

By definition, the 95% confidence interval is the collection of all those values of μ for which

$$t_{df,\alpha/2} \leq t \leq t_{df,1-\alpha/2}$$

where $t_{df,\alpha/2}$ and $t_{df,1-\alpha/2}$ are the $\alpha/2$ and $(1-\alpha/2)$ quantiles of a t-distribution with df degrees of freedom, respectively. Hence:

$$t_{df,\alpha/2} \leq \frac{\bar{x} - \mu}{s[x]/\sqrt{n}} \leq t_{df,1-\alpha/2}$$

Rearranging:

$$\bar{x} - t_{df,\alpha/2}\frac{s[x]}{\sqrt{n}} \geq \mu \geq \bar{x} - t_{df,1-\alpha/2}\frac{s[x]}{\sqrt{n}}$$

Because the t-distribution is symmetric around zero, we can also write:

$$t_{df,1-\alpha/2} = -t_{df,\alpha/2}$$

Hence

$$\bar{x} + t_{df,\alpha/2}\frac{s[x]}{\sqrt{n}} \leq \mu \leq \bar{x} - t_{df,\alpha/2}\frac{s[x]}{\sqrt{n}}$$

or

$$\mu \in \left\{ \bar{x} \pm t_{df,\alpha/2} \frac{s[x]}{\sqrt{n}} \right\} \tag{9.6}$$

For the gold coin example of section 9.2, $\bar{x} = 19.164$, $s[x] = 0.0948$, $df = 4$ and $t_{4,0.025} = -2.776$. Hence the 95% confidence interval for μ is 19.16 ± 0.12 g/cm^3. Note that this interval does *not* overlap with the density of pure gold (19.30 g/cm^3), confirming again that the coins are not made of pure gold. However, the upper limit of the 95% confidence interval is 19.28 g/cm^3, which is not far off the 19.30 cm^3 value. Therefore it is possible that the amount of light contaminant is minor.

With increasing sample size, the t-distribution converges towards the normal distribution:
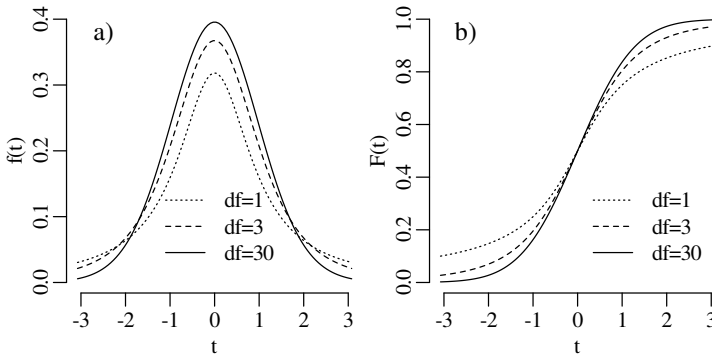
Figure 9.7: a) PDFs and b) CDFs of the t-distribution for three different degrees of freedom (*df*). For small sample sizes (low *df*), the t-distribution has long tails towards low and high values. With increasing sample size, the tails become shorter and the t-distribution sharper. When $df > 30$, the t-distribution is indistinguishable from a standard normal distribution with $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma = 1$.

Evaluating $t_{df,0.975}$ for different values of df:

df	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	30	100	1000
$t_{df,0.975}$	12.710	4.303	3.182	2.776	2.571	2.447	2.365	2.306	2.262	2.228	2.042	1.984	**1.962**

For large sample sizes, the 95% percentile of the t-distribution is the same as the 95% percentile of the normal distribution (= 1.962, see section 7.3). In this case Equation 9.6 simplifies to approximately

$$\mu \in \{ \bar{x} \pm 2s[\bar{x}] \}$$

where $s[\bar{x}]$ is the standard error of the mean (Equation 8.25).
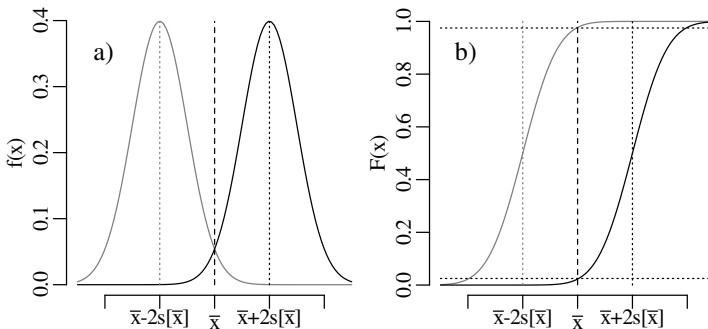
Figure 9.8: The grey and black lines mark the PDFs (a) and CDFs (b) of two normal distributions whose means (vertical dotted lines) are offset by 2 standard errors from the sample average (vertical dashed line). They mark a 95% confidence interval for μ. However this simple procedure only works if sample size is large enough for the Central Limit Theorem to apply.

It is important to bear in mind that this procedure only works for sufficiently large samples sizes. For samples sizes of $n < 30$, the '2-sigma' interval must be replaced with a 'studentised' confidence interval (i.e. Equation 9.6).

9.4   The χ^2-test

Comparing the means of two datasets is one way to assess their (dis)similarity. But as we have seen in chapter 2 and Figure 2.1, summary statistics like the mean do not always capture the data adequately. The χ^2 (chi-square) test is an alternative approach, which uses a histogram to compare the *shape* of a sample distribution with a theoretical distribution, or with another sample distribution.

To illustrate this method, let us go back to example 1 of chapter 6. Figure 6.2 tallied the number of magnitude ≥ 5.0 earthquakes per year from 1917 to 2016. This histogram represents 100 years, with values ranging from 1 to 12 events per year. Based on the similarity of the mean (5.43) and the variance (6.25), chapter 6 proceeded under the assumption that the data followed a Poisson distribution. The χ^2-test allows us to test this assumption more rigorously.

We begin by counting the number of events in each bin of Figure 6.2:

number of earthquakes per year	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
number of years	0 3 8 13 17 13 14 13 5 8 3 1 2

In order for the χ^2-test to work, all the bins should contain > 0 items and $4/5^{\text{th}}$s of them should contain at least 4 items. We can fulfil these requirements by *pooling* the smallest bins.

number of earthquakes per year	≤ 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 ≥ 10
number of years	11 13 17 13 14 13 5 8 6

Next, we calculate the *expected* number of events per bin using the probability mass function of the Poisson distribution with $\lambda = 5.43$ (Equation 6.1):

number of earthquakes per year (k)	≤ 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 ≥ 10
$N \times P(k|\lambda = 5.43)$	9.28 11.7 15.9 17.2 15.6 12.1 8.22 4.96 5.02

where $N = 100$ years. We can then compute the χ^2-statistic:

$$\chi^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{(O_i - E_i)^2}{E_i} \tag{9.7}$$

where O_i stands for the 'observed' and E_i for the 'expected' number of counts in the ith out of $n = 9$ bins.

Finally we compare the value of χ^2 with a chi-square distribution with $n - 2$ degrees of freedom, where one degree of freedom has been removed because we forced $\sum_{i=1}^{n} E_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} O_i$, and another degree of freedom was subtracted because we used the data to estimate λ when predicting the expected counts.

Applying the χ^2-test to the earthquake data:

1. Formulate two hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**): the earthquake data follow a Poisson distribution

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): the earthquake data do not follow a Poisson distribution

2. Calculate the χ^2-statistic using Equation 9.7:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\chi^2 =& \frac{(11-9.28)^2}{9.28} + \frac{(13-11.7)^2}{11.7} + \frac{(17-15.9)^2}{15.9} + \frac{(13-17.2)^2}{17.2} + \\
& \frac{(14-15.6)^2}{15.6} + \frac{(13-12.1)^2}{12.1} + \frac{(5-8.22)^2}{8.22} + \frac{(8-4.96)^2}{4.96} + \frac{(6-5.02)^2}{5.02} = 5.14
\end{aligned}
\tag{9.8}
$$

3. Under $H_\circ$, Equation 9.7 follows a χ^2-distribution 7 degrees of freedom. Tabulating some key quantiles for this distribution:

χ^2	1.24	1.69	2.17	2.83	4.25	*5.14*	6.35	9.04	12.0	14.1	16.0	18.5
$P(X \leq \chi^2)$	0.01	0.025	0.05	0.1	0.25	*0.36*	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99
$P(X \geq \chi^2)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	*0.743*	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	0.025	0.01

where the observed value is marked in italics.

4. We will use an $\alpha = 0.05$ confidence level.

5. We are only interested in the upper tail of the null distribution, because this indicates sample distributions that are very dissimilar from the theoretical distribution. The lower tail of the distribution groups samples that are very similar to the predicted distribution (see section 9.6 for further discussion). Marking the rejection region in bold:

χ^2	1.24	1.69	2.17	2.83	4.25	*5.14*	6.35	9.04	12.0	**14.1**	**16.0**	**18.5**
$P(X \geq \chi^2)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	*0.743*	0.5	0.25	0.1	**0.05**	**0.025**	**0.01**

The one-sided rejection region consists of all $\chi^2 \geq 14.1$.

6. Because the observed value of $\chi^2 = 5.14$ falls outside the rejection region, we cannot reject the null hypothesis.

Figure 9.9: a) PDF and b) CDF of the χ^2-distribution with 5 degrees of freedom. The rejection region is marked in black. The observed value for the earthquake data ($\chi^2 = 5.14$) is shown as a vertical dashed line. It plots outside the rejection region, indicating that the histogram of the data falls within the expected range of the hypothesised (Poisson) distribution.

9.5   Comparing two or more samples

Recall that the t-test of section 9.2 could either be used to compare the mean of a single sample with a particular value, or to compare the means of two samples. In a similar vein, the χ^2-test can be used to compare either one sample to a theoretical distribution, or to compare two samples with each other. For example, let us compare the clast counts of section 2.1 with those of a second sample:

lithology	granite	basalt	gneiss	quartzite
sample A	10	5	6	20
sample B	25	12	10	35

Table 9.1: Observed clast counts for two sets of cobbles.

This is a 2×4 **contingency table**. Note that the two samples contain a different number of clasts.

lithology	granite	basalt	gneiss	quartzite	row sum
sample A	10	5	6	20	41
sample B	25	12	10	35	82
column sum	35	17	16	55	123

If the two samples have the same underlying composition, then the expected counts of each cell in the contingency table should be:

$$\text{expected counts of bin } (i, j) = \frac{(\text{sum of row } i) \times (\text{sum of column } j)}{(\text{sum of all the cells})}$$

For example, the expected number of granite clasts in sample A would be

$$\frac{41 \times 35}{123} = 11.7$$

Applying this formula to the whole table, the expected counts are

lithology	granite	basalt	gneiss	quartzite
sample A	11.7	5.67	5.33	18.3
sample B	23.3	11.30	10.70	36.7

Table 9.2: Expected clast counts for two sets of cobbles.

The observed (table 9.1) and expected (table 9.2) clast counts can be plugged into Equation 9.7 to calculate a χ^2-value. The null distribution of this statistic is χ^2 with $(n_r-1) \times (n_c-1)$ degrees of freedom, where n_r is the number of rows and n_c is the number of columns. The χ^2-test then proceeds in the same way as the one-sample case of section 9.4:

1. Formulate two hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**): samples A and B have the same composition

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): samples A and B do not have the same composition

2. Calculate the χ^2-statistic with Equation 9.7, using table 9.1 for the observed and table 9.2 for the predicted values:

$$\begin{aligned} \chi^2 = &\frac{(10 - 11.7)^2}{11.7} + \frac{(5 - 5.67)^2}{5.67} + \frac{(6 - 5.33)^2}{5.33} + \frac{(20 - 18.3)^2}{18.3} + \\ &\frac{(25 - 23.3)^2}{23.3} + \frac{(12 - 11.30)^2}{11.30} + \frac{(10 - 10.70)^2}{10.70} + \frac{(35 - 36.7)^2}{36.7} = 0.86 \end{aligned}$$

(9.9)

3. Under $H_\circ$, Equation 9.7 follows a χ^2-distribution with $(2 - 1) \times (4 - 1) = 3$ degrees of freedom. Tabulating some key quantiles for this distribution:

χ^2	0.115	0.216	0.352	0.584	*0.86*	1.21	2.37	4.11	6.25	7.81	9.35	11.3
$P(X \leq \chi^2)$	0.01	0.025	0.05	0.1	*0.157*	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99
$P(X \geq \chi^2)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	*0.843*	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	0.025	0.01

where the observed value is marked in italics.

4. The confidence level $\alpha = 0.05$.

5. Marking the rejection region in bold:

χ^2	0.115	0.216	0.352	0.584	*0.86*	1.21	2.37	4.11	6.25	**7.81**	**9.35**	**11.3**
$P(X \geq \chi^2)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	*0.843*	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	**0.05**	**0.025**	**0.01**

The one-sided rejection region consists of all $\chi^2 > 7.81$.

6. Because the observed value of $\chi^2 = 0.86$ falls outside this region, we cannot reject the null hypothesis.

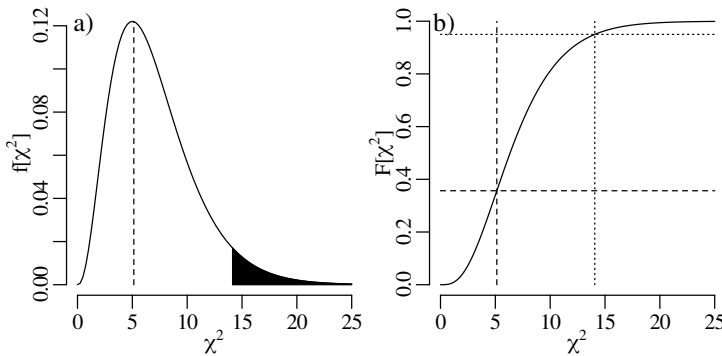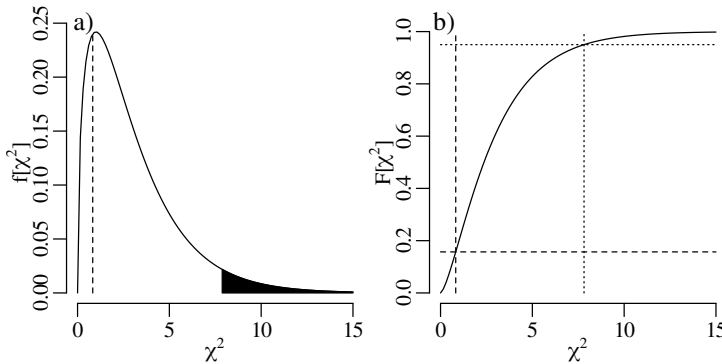Figure 9.10: a) PDF and b) CDF of the χ^2-distribution with 3 degrees of freedom. The rejection region is marked in black. The observed value ($\chi^2 = 0.86$) is shown as a vertical dashed line. It plots outside the rejection region, indicating that the histogram of the data falls within the expected range of the hypothesised (Poisson) distribution.

9.6 Cherry picking (Type-I errors revisited)

The χ^2-distribution only covers positive numbers, from 0 to ∞. Low χ^2-values indicate a good fit of the data to the proposed distribution, and high χ^2-values indicate a bad fit. This is why the χ^2-tests of section 9.4 were one-tailed tests: we want to identify the bad fits in order to reject the null hypothesis. However it would be wrong to ignore the good fits.

Section 5.5 made the case that, in general, the desired outcome of a statistical test is the rejection of the null hypothesis. However, in the context of distributional tests, our life is often easier if the null hypothesis is *not* rejected. For example, if the data pass a χ^2-test for a Poisson distribution, then this allows us to model the data with a single number (λ). If the data fail the χ^2-test, then we may have to abandon the simplicity of the Poisson distribution and use a more realistic but complex alternative.

The desire to see the data pass a hypothesis test leads some scientists to **cherry pick** data. This means that they selectively remove perceived 'outliers' from the data until the remaining values pass the null hypothesis. It is important to remember that, even if the null hypothesis is true, we should still expect 5% (if $\alpha = 0.05$) of all samples fail the null hypothesis. That is, there is always a 5% chance of committing a Type-I error (section 5.4).

If all samples in a study have p-values of well over 0.05, then this should raise suspicion. For example, comparing a Poisson null distribution (a) with three samples (b–d):
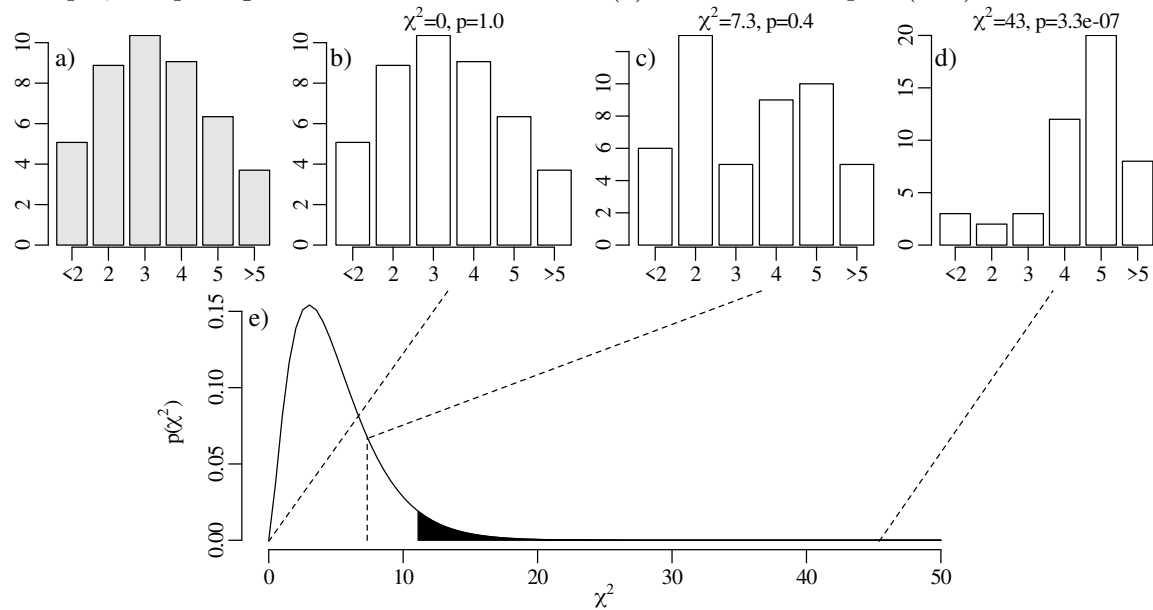
Figure 9.11: a) predicted frequency distribution for the zircon count data of example 2 in chapter 6, following a Poisson distribution with $\lambda = 3.50$ and $n = 48$; b) – d) three sample distributions with the χ^2 statistic and p-values for comparison with distribution a; e) χ^2-distribution with 5 degrees of freedom. The χ^2-test would flag sample d as being 'significantly different' from the predicted histogram a. Sample c also looks somewhat different from the predicted distribution a, but this difference falls within the expected range of random sampling variability of the Poisson distribution. Sample b is identical to the prediction a. This should raise suspicion. It is extremely unlikely for a sample to fit the prediction so well.

The first sample is identical to the predicted distribution (χ^2-statistic = 0.0, p-value = 1.0). Such a 'good' result would be extremely unlikely to happen by chance.

9.7 Effect size (Type-II errors revisited)

Let us carry out a similar experiment to section 9.5, but instead of counting a few sedimentary clasts by hand, we task a machine to classify ~10,000 grains of sand by image recognition:

lithology	quartz	plagioclase	alkali feldspar	lithics
sample A	29544	14424	13706	47864
sample B	29454	14788	13948	47311

Table 9.3: Point counting data for two samples of sand.

At first glance, the two samples look very similar in composition. But let's carry out a two-sample χ^2-test to be sure.

1. Formulate two hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**): samples A and B have identical compositions

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): samples A and B have different compositions

2. The expected number of counts for each cell of the contingency table is obtained using the procedure outlined in section 9.5. Calculate the row and column sums:

lithology	quartz	plagioclase	alkali feldspar	lithics	row sum
sample A	29544	14424	13706	47864	105538
sample B	29454	14788	13948	47311	105501
column sum	58998	29212	27654	95175	211039

and combine them to produce the following predicted counts:

lithology	quartz	plagioclase	alkali feldspar	lithics
sample A	29504	14609	13829	47596
sample B	29494	14603	13825	47579

Table 9.4: Predicted point counts.

Plugging tables 9.3 and 9.4 into Equation 9.7 yields

$$\chi^2 = 10.0$$

3. Under $H_\circ$, the test statistic follows a χ^2-distribution 3 degrees of freedom. Tabulating some key quantiles for this distribution:

χ^2	0.115	0.216	0.352	0.584	1.21	2.37	4.11	6.25	7.81	9.35	*10.0*	11.3
$P(X \leq \chi^2)$	0.01	0.025	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	*0.9814*	0.99
$P(X \geq \chi^2)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	0.025	*0.0186*	0.010

where the observed value is marked in italics.

4. The confidence level $\alpha = 0.05$.

5. Marking the rejection region in bold:

χ^2	0.115	0.216	0.352	0.584	1.21	2.37	4.11	6.25	**7.81**	**9.35**	***10.0***	**11.3**
$P(X \geq \chi^2)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	**0.05**	**0.025**	***0.0186***	**0.010**

The one-sided rejection region consists of all $\chi^2 > 7.81$.

6. The observed value of $\chi^2 = 10.0$ falls inside this region, and so we reject $H_\circ$.

So despite the close similarity of the point counts for samples A and B in table 9.3, the χ^2-test convincingly rejects the null hypothesis that they were drawn from the same population. To understand what is going on, we need to go back to section 5.5. This section explained that the power of a statistical test to evaluate a null hypothesis monotonically increase with sample size.

With a sample size of more than 100,000 counts per sample, it is not surprising that the χ^2-test is able to detect even the tiniest difference between samples A and B. In comparison, the two samples of section 9.5 only contain 41 and 82 samples, respectively. Consequently, it is more difficult to detect a small difference in composition between them.

The power of a statistical test actually depends on two things:

1. Sample size: the larger the sample size, the easier it is to reject a false null hypothesis.

2. The *degree to which the null hypothesis is false*: the greater the difference between the underlying populations, the easier it is to recognise this difference in the samples.

The second factor is also known as the **effect size**. In the case of the χ^2-distribution, the effect size is defined as:

$$w = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{(o_i - e_i)^2}{e_i}} \tag{9.10}$$

where $o_i = O_i/N$ and $e_i = E_i/N$ with $N = \sum_i^n O_i = \sum_i^n E_i$. Effect sizes can be small, medium or large:

effect size	small	medium	large
w	0.1	0.3	0.5

For the framework mineral counts,

	lithology	quartz	plagioclase	alkali feldspar	lithics
$o =$	sample A	0.1400	0.06835	0.06495	0.2268
	sample B	0.1396	0.07007	0.06609	0.2242

and

	lithology	quartz	plagioclase	alkali feldspar	lithics
$e =$	sample A	0.1398	0.06922	0.06553	0.2255
	sample B	0.1398	0.06920	0.06551	0.2255

Plugging these values into Equation 9.10 yields an effect size of $w = 0.00688$, which is very small indeed. With a smaller sample size, the difference between A and B would have gone unnoticed. The only reason why the χ^2-test failed is the huge size of the two samples. The tiny effect size indicates that, although the difference between samples A and B may be statistically significant, it is not *geologically significant*.

9.8   Non-parametric tests

The t-test and χ^2-test make specific parametric assumptions about the data:

– The t-test assumes that the population mean follows a normal distribution. This may not be correct for small samples from multimodal distributions. For example, when averaging $n = 2$ or $n = 3$ values from the bimodal geyser data (Figures 7.3 and 7.4), the assumption of normality is clearly incorrect.

– The χ^2-test requires binning the data into a histogram. This makes it well suited for discrete distributions such as the binomial and Poisson distribution. However it is less well adapted to continuous distributions such as the normal distribution. Furthermore, each bin in the histogram requires a sufficient number of counts for the χ^2-assumption to be valid. This requirement may not be fulfilled for small samples.

These limitations can be avoided with **non-parametric tests**, which offer greater flexibility than parametric tests whilst increasing robustness to outliers.

The **Wilcoxon test** (which is also known as the Mann-Whitney test) is a non-parametric alternative to the t-test. Consider two sets of numbers, representing two different samples:

sample	1	2	3	4	5
A	A_1	A_2	A_3	A_4	A_5
B	B_1	B_2	B_3	B_4	

To calculate the test statistic, merge the two samples and rank them. For example, suppose that $A_4 < A_1 < A_2 < B_3 < A_5 < B_1 < B_4 < A_3 < B_2$. Then

rank	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
value	A_4	A_1	A_2	B_3	A_5	B_1	B_4	A_3	B_2

If the two samples follow the same distribution, then we would expect the values to be randomly shuffled and evenly distributed on either side of the median. However if the two samples follow different distributions, then their values will be unevenly distributed. The test statistic is given by the sum of the ranks of the smallest sample. In our case, sample A contains 5 and sample B 4 items. Thus we calculate sum of the ranks of sample B:

$$W = 4 + 6 + 7 + 9 = 26$$

For sample sizes of $n_A = 5$ and $n_B = 4$, W takes on values between $\sum_{i=1}^{4} i = 10$ and $\sum_{i=5}^{9} i = 35$. The closer the W-value is to these extremes, the less likely it is that samples A and B were drawn from the same distribution. The hypothesis test is carried out by comparing W with a lookup table. To understand how this lookup table is constructed, let us consider the smallest possible outcome for W, which is $W = 10$. This outcome corresponds to the following arrangements:

arrangement 1:	B_1	B_2	B_3	B_4	A_1	A_2	A_3	A_4	A_5
arrangement 2:	B_2	B_1	B_3	B_4	A_1	A_2	A_3	A_4	A_5
arrangement 2:	B_1	B_2	B_3	B_4	A_2	A_1	A_3	A_4	A_5
etc.									

The total number of arrangements that result in $W = 10$ is 4!5! (2880 possibilities). To compute the probability of $W = 10$ under the null hypothesis, we must divide this value by the total number of permutations of the 9 values, which is 9! (see section 4.1). Therefore:

$$P(W = 10 | n_A = 5, n_B = 4) = \frac{4!5!}{9!} = 0.00794$$

The probability of other outcomes is computed in a similar fashion.

Let us illustrate the Wilcoxon rank-sum test with the two-sample example of table 9.2:

coin #	1	2	3	4	5
density (1st collection)	19.07	19.09	19.17	19.18	19.31
density (2nd collection)	**19.17**	**19.30**	**19.31**	**19.32**	

Table 9.5: The same data as table 9.2 but with the second sample marked in bold for future use.

1. Formulate two hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**)   median(sample 1) = median(sample 2)

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**):   median(sample 1) $\neq$ median(sample 2)

2. To calculate the test statistic, merge the two samples and rank them:

rank	1	2	3.5	**3.5**	5	**6**	7.5	**7.5**	**9**
density	19.07	19.09	19.17	**19.17**	19.18	**19.30**	**19.31**	19.31	**19.32**

The test statistic is then simply the sum of the ranks for the smallest sample:

$$W = 3.5 + 6 + 7.5 + 9 = 26$$

Which (intentionally) is the same value for the earlier generic example.

3. Under $H_\circ$, the test statistic follows a Wilcoxon rank-sum distribution for $n_1 = 5$ and $n_2 = 4$. Tabulating some key quantiles for this distribution:

W	10	11	12	14	16	19	22	24	*26*	27	28
$P(w \leq W)$	0.01	0.025	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	*0.95*	0.975	0.99
$P(w \geq W)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	*0.05*	0.025	0.01

where the observed value is marked in italics.

4. The confidence level $\alpha = 0.05$.

5. Marking the two-sided rejection region in bold:

W	**10**	11	12	14	16	19	22	24	*26*	27	**28**
$P(w \leq W)$	**0.01**	0.025	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	*0.95*	0.975	0.99
$P(w \geq W)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	*0.05*	0.025	**0.01**

The rejection region consists of $W = 10$ and $W > 27$.

6. The observed value of $W = 26$ falls outside the rejection region, and so we cannot reject $H_\circ$.
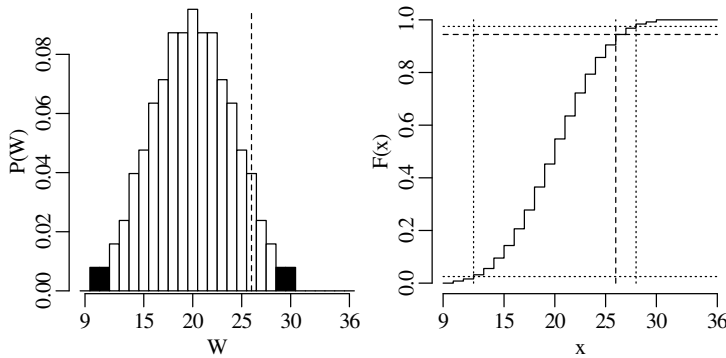
Figure 9.12: a) PMF and b) CDF of the Wilcoxon test statistic for comparison of two samples containing 5 and 4 items, respectively. The two-sided rejection region is marked in black. The observed value ($W = 26$) is shown as a vertical dashed line. It plots outside the rejection region, leaving open the possibility that the two samples might have come from the same distribution.

The **Kolmogorov-Smirnov test** is non-parametric alternative to the χ^2-test that does not require binning. Given two sets of numbers:

$$x = \{x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\} \text{ and } y = \{y_1, y_2, \ldots, y_m\}$$

the Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistic is defined as the maximum vertical distance between the ECDFs (section 2.6) of the two samples:

$$D = \max_z |F_x(z) - F_y(z)| \tag{9.11}$$

where F_x and F_y are the ECDFs of x and y, respectively. D takes on values from 0 (two identical distributions) and 1 (no overlap between the two distributions).

To illustrate the Kolmogorov-Smirnov method, consider two sand samples from China: one sample from the Yellow River, and one sample from a sand dune in the nearby Mu Us desert. We have separated the mineral zircon from the sand and analysed the crystallisation age of > 100 randomly selected zircon grains with the U–Pb method. The distribution of the zircon dates serves as a characteristic 'fingerprint' that can be used to compare the different samples.
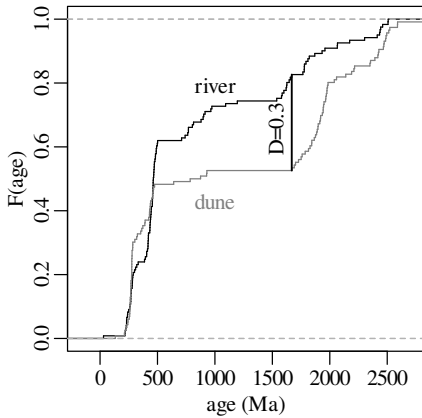
Figure 9.13: The two-sample Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistic is the maximum vertical distance between two ECDFs. This example compares the cumulative distributions of 121 detrital zircon U–Pb ages from the Yellow River with 116 detrital zircon U–Pb ages from a sand dune in the adjacent Mu Us desert. The KS-distance is 0.3006.

The hypothesis test then proceeds as always:

1. Formulate two hypotheses:

   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**): samples 1 and 2 were drawn from the same distribution

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): samples 1 and 2 were drawn from different distributions

2. The test statistic is $D = 0.30$ (see Figure 9.13).

3. Under $H_\circ$, the Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistic can be compared to a look-up table similar to the one that was used for the Wilcoxon test. Tabulating some key quantiles:

D	0.061	0.061	0.070	0.078	0.087	0.104	0.130	0.157	0.174	0.191	0.209	*0.301*
$P(d \leq D)$	0.01	0.025	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99	*0.99996*
$P(d \geq D)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	0.025	0.010	*0.000045*

   where the observed value is marked in italics.

4. The confidence level $\alpha = 0.05$.

5. Marking the one-sided rejection region in bold:

D	0.061	0.061	0.070	0.078	0.087	0.104	0.130	0.157	**0.174**	**0.191**	**0.209**	*0.301*
$P(d \geq D)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	**0.05**	**0.025**	**0.010**	*0.000045*

   The rejection region consists of all $D > 0.174$.

6. The observed value of $D = 0.301$ falls inside this region, so $H_\circ$ is rejected.

Figure 9.14: a) PMF and b) CDF of the Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistic for comparison of two samples containing 116 and 121 items, respectively. The vertical dashed lines mark the test statistic for the two sand samples of Figure 9.13. The rejection region is marked in black on the PMF and groups all values of the test statistic that exceed the 95 percentile ($D = 0.174$). $H_\circ$ is rejected.

The Kolmogorov-Smirnov test can not only be used to compare two samples with each other, but also to compare one sample with a theoretical distribution. Here, for the sake of illustration, we compare the dune sample with a normal distribution that has the same mean and standard deviation:

Figure 9.15: Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistic for the comparison of a sample with the normal distribution with the same mean and standard deviation. In this case $D = 0.27$, which can be compared with a lookup table for a *one sample* Kolmogorov-Smirnov test. The outcome of this test (which is not elaborated in these notes) is a rejection of the null hypothesis.

Chapter 10

Regression

[87]Rb is radioactive and decays to [87]Sr with a decay constant of $\lambda = 1.42 \times 10^{-5}$ Myr[-1]. [86]Sr is a second isotope of Sr that does not have a radioactive parent. Together these three nuclides form the basis of a geochronometer:

$$\left[\frac{^{87}Sr}{^{86}Sr}\right] = \left[\frac{^{87}Sr}{^{86}Sr}\right]_\circ + \left[\frac{^{87}Rb}{^{86}Sr}\right]\left(e^{\lambda t} - 1\right) \tag{10.1}$$

where t is the age of the system, in millions of years, and $[^{87}Sr/^{86}Sr]_\circ$ is the non-radiogenic [87]Sr/[86]Sr ratio, i.e. the ratio that was initially present in the sample at $t = 0$. When applied to multiple measurements, Equation 10.1 fits the generic formula for a straight line:

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 \, x_i \tag{10.2}$$

where x_i and y_i are the [87]Rb/[86]Sr- and [87]Sr/[86]Sr-ratios of the ith aliquot (out of n), respectively. $x = \{x_1, \ldots, x_n\}$ is also known as the **independent variable** and $y = \{y_1, \ldots, y_n\}$ as the **dependent variable**. The following table shows an example of eight Rb–Sr compositions from the same rock:

i	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$[^{87}Rb/^{86}Sr] = x_i$	2.90	7.14	9.10	3.41	1.91	7.15	5.92	8.28
$[^{87}Sr/^{86}Sr] = y_i$	0.745	0.803	0.823	0.737	0.720	0.793	0.789	0.807

Table 10.1: Rb–Sr composition of eight aliquots ($1 \le i \le 8$) of the same sample.

Visualising the data on a scatter plot:

Figure 10.1: Isochron plot for the Rb–Sr data. The scatter plot of eight [87]Rb/[86]Sr- and [87]Sr/[86]Sr-ratios forms an array of points along a line whose intercept marks the initial [87]Sr/[86]Sr-composition, and whose intercept is a function of the age ($t = \ln[1 + \beta_1]/\lambda$). The linear trend is not perfect due to analytical uncertainty, which has dispersed the data.

The dispersion of the data around the straight line can be captured by a slightly modified version of Equation 10.2:

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 \, x_i + \epsilon_i \tag{10.3}$$

where ϵ_i is the **residual** noise around the best fit line.

The linear trend seems quite strong in the Rb–Sr example, but this may not always be the case. The **correlation coefficient** is a parameter that can be used to quantify the strength and test the significance of an apparent linear trend.

10.1   The correlation coefficient

Recall the definition of *standard deviation* (σ_x, σ_y) and *covariance* $(\sigma_{x,y})$ from Section 7.3. Then Pearson's correlation coefficient is defined as:

$$\rho = \frac{\sigma_{x,y}}{\sigma_x \sigma_y} \tag{10.4}$$

Section 7.4 showed that σ_x, σ_y and $\sigma_{x,y}$ are unknown but can be *estimated* from the data using Equations 7.12 and 7.14:

$$s[x] = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{n-1}(x_i - \bar{x})^2}$$

$$s[x,y] = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{n-1}(x_i - \bar{x})(y_i - \bar{y})$$

where $\bar{x}$ and $\bar{y}$ are the mean of x and y, respectively. Then Pearson's correlation coefficient *for samples* is defined as:

$$r = \frac{s[x,y]}{s[x]s[y]} \tag{10.5}$$

Both ρ and r take on values between -1 and +1. It is also common for the degree of correlation to be quantified as r^2, which produces values between 0 and 1. r^2 is also known as the **coefficient of determination**.

Figure 10.2: Four synthetic bivariate normal datasets exhibiting different degrees of correlation between the x- and y-variable. Panel a) displays no correlation, b) a weak positive correlation, c) a strong positive correlation, and d) a strong negative correlation.

The 'weak' and 'strong' qualifiers in Figure 10.2 are subjective assessments of the linear trend. A more objective evaluation is possible by the fact that

$$t = \frac{r\sqrt{n-2}}{\sqrt{1-r^2}} \tag{10.6}$$

follows a t-distribution with $n-2$ degrees of freedom. Thus we can formally test whether the apparent correlation between the ^{87}Rb/^{86}Sr- and ^{87}Sr/^{86}Sr-ratios in Figure 10.1 is statistically significant. Plugging the data of Table 10.1 into Equation 10.5 yields a correlation coefficient of $r = 0.985$. This seems high enough but let's subject it to a hypothesis test anyway:

1. Formulate two hypotheses:
   $H_\circ$ (**null hypothesis**) $\qquad\qquad\qquad \rho = 0$

   H_a (**alternative hypothesis**): $\qquad\quad \rho \neq 0$

2. Plugging $r = 0.985$ into Equation 10.6 yields a test statistic of

$$t = \frac{0.985\sqrt{8-2}}{\sqrt{1-0.985^2}} = 13.98$$

3. Tabulating some key quantiles for t under $H_\circ$:

t	-3.10	-2.40	-1.90	-1.40	-0.72	0	0.72	1.40	1.90	2.40	3.10	*13.98*
$P(t \leq T)$	0.01	0.025	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99	*0.9999958*
$P(t \geq T)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	0.025	0.010	*0.0000042*

where the observed value is marked in italics.

4. We will use a confidence level $\alpha = 0.05$.

5. Marking the two-sided rejection region in bold:

t	**-3.10**	**-2.40**	-1.90	-1.40	-0.72	0	0.72	1.40	1.90	**2.40**	**3.10**	*13.98*
$P(t \leq T)$	**0.01**	**0.025**	0.05	0.1	0.25	0.5	0.75	0.9	0.95	0.975	0.99	*0.9999958*
$P(t \geq T)$	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.9	0.75	0.5	0.25	0.1	0.05	**0.025**	**0.010**	*0.0000042*

The rejection region consists of all $|t| > 2.40$.

6. The observed value of $t = 13.98$ clearly falls inside the rejection region, so $H_\circ$ is rejected.
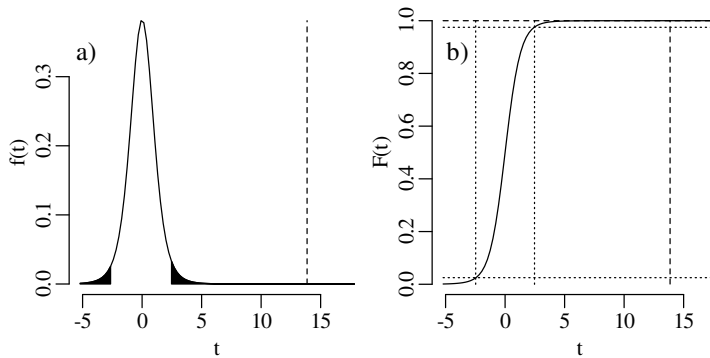
Figure 10.3: a) PDF and b) CDF of a t-distribution with 3 degrees of freedom. The two-sided rejection region (for $\alpha = 0.05$) is marked in black. The vertical dashed line marks the observed value of t = 13.98 and plots inside the rejection region. Therefore the test rejects the null hypothesis that $\rho = 0$, leading to the conclusion that the data are significantly correlated.

Now that we have convinced ourselves that the correlation is significant, we can try to fit a line through the data. In order to find the best possible fit, we first need to define what we need with 'best'. There are many ways to do this, but the most common of these is the methods of least squares.

10.2 Least Squares

As the name suggests, the least squares criterion quantifies the misfit of the line through the data as the sum of the squared residuals:

$$ss \equiv \sum_{i=1}^{n} \epsilon_i^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{n} (\beta_0 + \beta_1 x_i - y_i)^2 \tag{10.7}$$

Let us take a wild guess and assume that $\beta_0 = 0.6$ and $\beta_1 = 0.03$:

i	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
x_i	2.90	7.14	9.10	3.41	1.91	7.15	5.92	8.28
y_i	0.745	0.803	0.823	0.737	0.720	0.793	0.789	0.807
$\beta_0 + \beta_1 x_i$	0.687	0.8142	0.873	0.7023	0.6573	0.8145	0.7776	0.8484
ϵ_i	-0.058	0.0112	0.05	-0.0347	-0.0627	0.0215	-0.0114	0.0414

Table 10.2: The same data as Table 10.1. y_i are the observed and $\beta_0 + \beta_1 x_i$ the *fitted* values of the dependent variable. The residuals ϵ_i are the differences between these two sets of numbers.

The next figure evaluates the ϵ_i-values into Equation 10.7 yields a sum of squares $ss = 0.013$. Evaluating some other values:

Figure 10.4: Three guesses for the intercept (β_0) and slope (β_1) of the Rb–Sr isochron data of Figure 10.1. Dashed lines mark the residuals. The lines in panels a) and b) are too steep and too shallow, respectively. Consequently, the sum of their squared residuals (ss) is non-zero. Panel c) shows a better fit and a lower sum of squares.

Instead of minimising ss by iterating over all possible values of β_0 and β_1, we can find the optimal solution by taking the partial derivatives of Equation 10.7 w.r.t. β_0 and β_1 and setting them to zero:

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial ss}{\partial \beta_0} = 2\sum(\beta_0 + \beta_1 x_i - y_i) = 0 \\ \frac{\partial ss}{\partial \beta_1} = 2\sum(\beta_0 + \beta_1 x_i - y_i)x_i = 0 \end{cases} \tag{10.8}$$

Solving this system of equations, it can be shown that:

$$\begin{cases} \hat{\beta}_0 = \left(\sum x_i^2 \sum y_i - \sum x_i \sum x_i y_i\right) / \left(n\sum x_i^2 - \left(\sum x_i\right)^2\right) \\ \hat{\beta}_1 = \left(n\sum x_i y_i - \sum x_i \sum y_i\right) / \left(n\sum x_i^2 - \left(\sum x_i\right)^2\right) \end{cases} \tag{10.9}$$

For the Rb–Sr data:

i	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	$\sum_{i-1}^{8}$
x_i	2.90	7.14	9.10	3.41	1.91	7.15	5.92	8.28	45.81
y_i	0.745	0.803	0.823	0.737	0.720	0.793	0.789	0.807	6.217
x_i^2	8.41	50.98	82.81	11.63	3.648	51.12	35.05	68.56	312.2
$x_i y_i$	2.160	5.733	7.489	2.513	1.375	5.670	4.671	6.682	36.29

so that

$$\begin{cases} \hat{\beta}_0 = (312.2 \times 6.217 - 45.81 \times 36.29)/\left(8 \times 312.2 - 45.81^2\right) = 0.698 \\ \hat{\beta}_1 = (8 \times 36.29 - 45.81 \times 6.217)/\left(8 \times 312.2 - 45.81^2\right) = 0.0138 \end{cases}$$

10.3   Maximum Likelihood

Least squares regression is just one way to determine the fit parameters of a straight line. The method of maximum likelihood (Sections 5.1, 6.2, 7.4 and 8.4) is an alternative way. This section will show that these two approaches produce exactly the same results. Recall the general formulation of the linear regression problem (Equation 10.3):

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 \ x_i + \epsilon_i$$

Let us assume that the residuals (ϵ_i) are normally distributed *with zero mean*:

$$f(\epsilon_i|\beta_0,\beta_1,\sigma) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}}\exp\left[-\frac{\epsilon_i^2}{2\sigma^2}\right], \text{ where } \epsilon_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_i - y_i \tag{10.10}$$

In that case, we can estimate β_0 and β_1 by maximising the (log-)likelihood, in exactly the same fashion as the maximum likelihood estimation algorithm of Section 7.4 and Equation 7.8

$$\mathcal{L}(\beta_0,\beta_1,\sigma|\{x_1,y_1\},\ldots,\{x_n,y_n\}) = \prod_{i=1}^{n}\frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}}\exp\left[-\frac{\epsilon_i^2}{2\sigma^2}\right] \tag{10.11}$$

Minimising Equation 10.7 is equivalent to maximising Equation 10.11:

$$\begin{aligned}
\max_{\beta_0,\beta_1}\left[\prod_{i=1}^{n}\mathcal{L}\right] &= \max_{\beta_0,\beta_1}\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\ln\mathcal{L}\right] = \max_{\beta_0,\beta_1}\left[\ln\left(\frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}}\right) - \sum_{i=1}^{n}\left(\frac{\epsilon_i^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)\right] \\
&= \max_{\beta_0,\beta_1}\left[-\sum_{i=1}^{n}\epsilon_i^2\right] = \min_{\beta_0,\beta_1}\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\epsilon_i^2\right] = \min_{\beta_0,\beta_1}(ss)
\end{aligned} \tag{10.12}$$

This means that the least squares and maximum likelihood methods produce exactly the same result, and that linear regression works best when the residuals are normally distributed. Error propagation of the estimated regression coefficients ($\hat{\beta}_0$, $\hat{\beta}_1$) proceeds as in Section 8.4:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Sigma_{\hat{\beta}} &= \begin{bmatrix} s[\hat{\beta}_0]^2 & s[\hat{\beta}_0,\hat{\beta}_1] \\ s[\hat{\beta}_0,\hat{\beta}_1] & s[\hat{\beta}_1]^2 \end{bmatrix} = -\mathcal{H}^{-1} \\
&= -\begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial^2\mathcal{LL}}{\partial\beta_0^2} & \frac{\partial^2\mathcal{LL}}{\partial\beta_0\partial\beta_1} \\ \frac{\partial^2\mathcal{LL}}{\partial\beta_0\partial\beta_1} & \frac{\partial^2\mathcal{LL}}{\partial\beta_1^2} \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \\
&= -\frac{1}{\sigma^2}\begin{bmatrix} n & \sum_{i=1}^{n}x_i \\ \sum_{i=1}^{n}x_i & \sum_{i=1}^{n}x_i^2 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\sigma^2\sum_{i=1}^{n}x_i^2}{n\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i^2-\bar{x}^2)} & -\frac{\sigma^2\bar{x}}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i^2-\bar{x}^2)} \\ -\frac{\sigma^2\bar{x}}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i^2-\bar{x}^2)} & \frac{\sigma^2}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}(x_i^2-\bar{x}^2)} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned} \tag{10.13}$$

Equation 10.13 uses the standard deviation of the data around the linear fit (σ). This parameter is generally unknown and must be estimated from the data:

$$\hat{\sigma} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{(\hat{\beta}_0 + \hat{\beta}_1 x_i - y_i)^2}{n-2}} \tag{10.14}$$

Equation 10.14 looks similar to the usual definition of the standard deviation (Equation 7.12) except that 2 degrees of freedom have been subtracted instead of 1, because two parameters were estimated ($\hat{\beta}_0$ and $\hat{\beta}_1$) instead of one ($\bar{x}$).

Equation 10.13 can be used to construct a **confidence interval** for the regression coefficients. The prodedure for doing this is analogous to the construction of confidence intervals around the mean (Equation 9.6):

$$\beta_0 \in \left\{ \hat{\beta}_0 \pm t_{df,\alpha/2} \ s[\hat{\beta}_0] \right\} \text{ and } \beta_1 \in \left\{ \hat{\beta}_1 \pm t_{df,\alpha/2} \ s[\hat{\beta}_1] \right\} \tag{10.15}$$

where $df = n - 2$. We can then construct a **confidence envelope** around the best fit line by observing that $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x$ matches the equation for a sum, and applying the corresponding error propagation formula (Equation 8.10):

$$y \in \left\{ \hat{\beta}_0 + \hat{\beta}_1 x \pm t_{df,\alpha/2} \sqrt{s[\hat{\beta}_0]^2 + s[\hat{\beta}_1]^2 x^2 + 2s[\hat{\beta}_0, \hat{\beta}_1]x} \right\} \tag{10.16}$$

Applying Equation 10.16 to the Rb–Sr data and evaluating y for the full range of x-values:
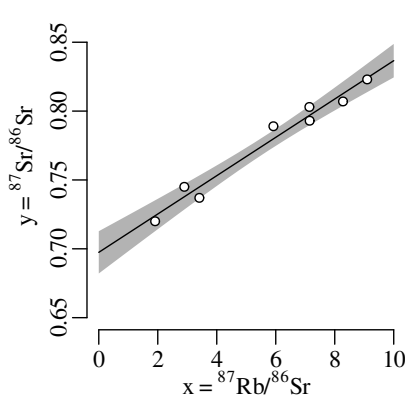
Figure 10.5: The grey area represents a 95% confidence envelope for the least squares regression of the Rb–Sr data. The curvature of this envelope reflects the increased uncertainty that is caused by **extrapolating** the data. The width of the confidence envelope is the smallest near the average of the measurements ($\bar{x}$, $\bar{y}$) and increases indefinitely beyond that.

Recall that the standard error of the mean decreases with increasing sample size (section 8.3). Exactly the same phenomenon applies to the standard errors of the regression parameters (Equation 10.13) and, hence, to the width of the confidence envelope. In order to assess the likely range of *future outcomes*, the confidence envelopes produced by Equation 10.16 need to be enlarged to produce a **prediction interval**:

$$y \in \left\{ \hat{\beta}_0 + \hat{\beta}_1 x \pm t_{df,\alpha/2} \sqrt{\hat{\sigma}^2 + s[\hat{\beta}_0]^2 + s[\hat{\beta}_1]^2 x^2 + 2s[\hat{\beta}_0, \hat{\beta}_1]x} \right\} \tag{10.17}$$

where $\hat{\sigma}$ is given by Equation 10.14. Comparing confidence intervals and prediction intervals for different sample sizes of three synthetic datasets:

Figure 10.6: Confidence envelopes (grey) and prediction intervals (dashed lines) for three synthetic datasets of increasing size. Whereas the width of the confidence interval approaches zero for large datasets, the width of the prediction interval only decreases slightly.

10.4 Common mistakes

Three mistakes are commonly made in regression analysis:

1. **p-hacking**: This problem was already discussed in section 6.4 but bears repeating in the context of linear regression. When presented with a multivariate dataset (e.g. the concentration of n chemical species in m samples), it is common practice in exploratory data analysis to plot all pairs of variables against each other in an $n \times m$ grid of scatter plots. When doing this it is inevitable that some of these pairs exhibit a statistically significant correlation.
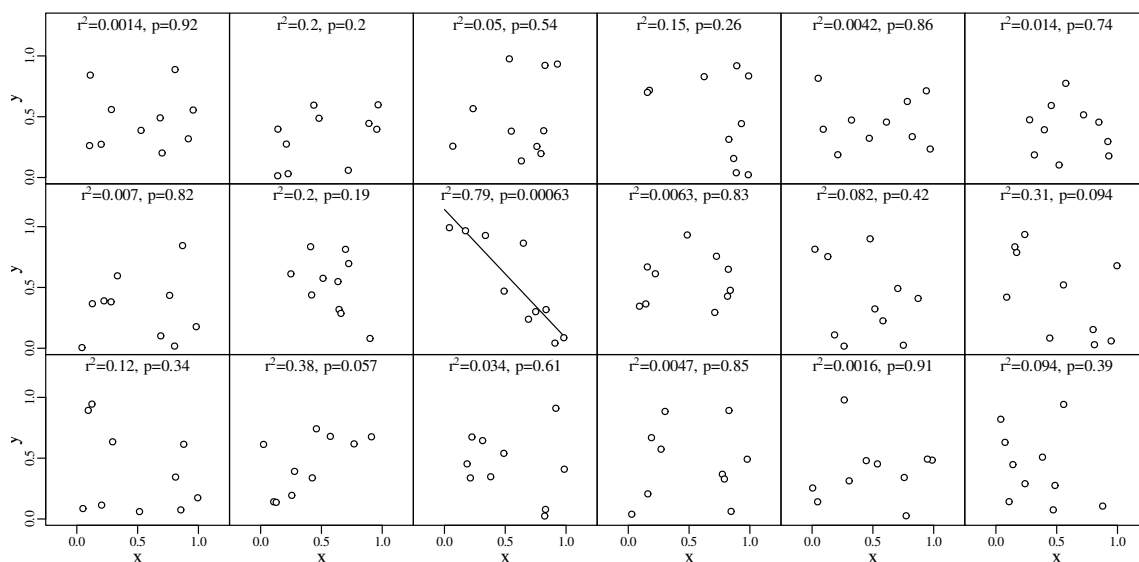
Figure 10.7: 18 scatter plots of random uniform bivariate data, with indication of the coefficient of determination (r^2) and the p-value for correlation. The one 'significant' result (p-value = 0.00063) is a Type-I error.

2. **outliers**: High values for the correlation coefficient (r) and coefficient of determination (r^2) are often taken as evidence for correlation. However these statistics are sensitive to extreme values. A single outlier can have a disproportionally large effect, suggesting a correlation where there is none.
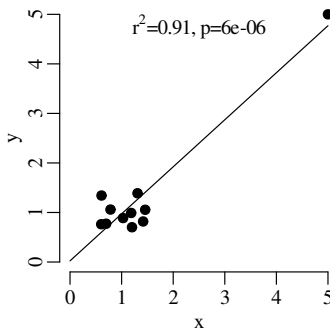
Figure 10.8: A synthetic dataset of ten clustered points around $\{x = 1, y = 1\}$ plus one outlier at $\{x = 5, y = 5\}$. The cluster consists of the same values as the first panel of Figure 10.7. But whereas the latter dataset was characterised by a coefficient of determination of almost zero ($r^2 = 0.0014$), the new dataset has a coefficient of determination that is close to one ($r^2 = 0.9$). Such is the disproportionate effect of the additional data point.

3. **Spurious correlation**: Let x, y and z be three *independent* random datasets of 50 numbers. Then the bivariate scatter plots of x vs. y, x vs. z and y vs. z do not exhibit any discernable correlation. However, plotting y/z vs. x/z, or z vs. x/z produces strong correlations:
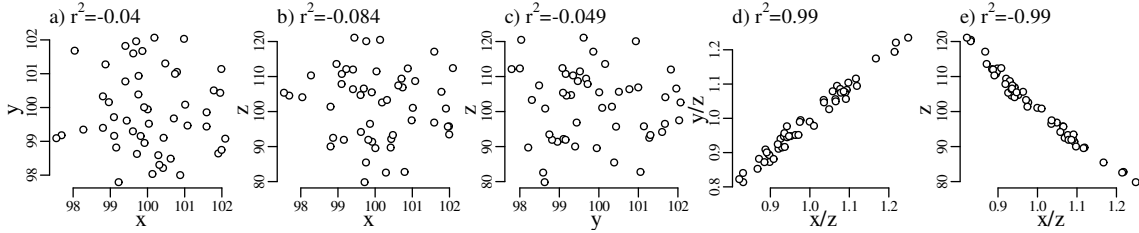

Figure 10.9: a–c) Three random datasets of 50 points each, drawn from normal distributions with means $\mu_x = \mu_y = \mu_z = 100$ and standard deviations $\sigma_x = \sigma_y = 1$ and $\sigma_z = 10$, respectively. The three datasets are independent, so $\rho_{x,y} = \rho_{x,z} = \rho_{y,z} = 0$. However, the ratio of x/z is strongly correlated with d) y/z, and with e) z. This correlation is entirely spurious and has no scientific value.

The data clouds in panels d) and e) of Figure 10.9 are strongly correlated even though x, y, z are uncorrelated. This correlation arises because z appears in both axes. This phenomenon was first described by Karl Pearson of the eponymous correlation coefficient (r, Equation 10.5), who also showed that it is possible to predict the expected correlation coefficient (or 'null correlation') associated with the spurious effect. In the general case of four samples w, x, y and z, the **ratio correlation** of w/y and x/z is given by:

$$\rho_{\frac{w}{y},\frac{x}{z}} \approx \frac{\rho_{w,x}\left[\frac{\sigma_w}{\mu_w}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right] - \rho_{w,z}\left[\frac{\sigma_w}{\mu_w}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right] - \rho_{x,y}\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right] + \rho_{y,z}\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]}{\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_w}{\mu_w}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]^2 - 2\rho_{w,y}\left[\frac{\sigma_w}{\mu_w}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]}\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2 - 2\rho_{x,z}\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]}} \tag{10.18}$$

Substituting z for y and y for w in Equation 10.18, and considering that $\rho_{z,z} = 1$, we can show that:

$$\rho_{\frac{y}{z},\frac{x}{z}} \approx \frac{\rho_{y,x}\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right] - \rho_{y,z}\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right] - \rho_{x,z}\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right] + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2}{\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2 - 2\rho_{y,z}\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]}\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2 - 2\rho_{x,z}\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]}} \tag{10.19}$$

Similarly, substituting y for w, and setting $z = 1$ and $\sigma_z = 0$ in Equation 10.18:

$$\rho_{z,\frac{x}{z}} \approx \frac{\rho_{z,x}\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right] - \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2}{\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2 - 2\rho_{x,z}\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]}} \tag{10.20}$$

For the example of Figure 10.9, where $\rho_{x,y} = \rho_{x,z} = \rho_{y,z} = 0$, the expected **null correlation** for x/z and y/z is obtained from Equation 10.19:

$$\rho_{\frac{y}{z},\frac{x}{z}} \approx \frac{\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2}{\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2}\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2}} = \frac{\left[\frac{10}{100}\right]^2}{\left[\frac{1}{100}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{10}{100}\right]^2} = 0.990 \tag{10.21}$$

which is in excellent agreement with the observed correlation coefficient of Figure 10.9d. Similarly, the null correlation for x/z and z is obtained from Equation 10.20:

$$\rho_{z,\frac{x}{z}} \approx \frac{-\left[\frac{10}{100}\right]^2}{\left[\frac{10}{100}\right]\sqrt{\left[\frac{1}{100}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{10}{100}\right]^2}} = -0.995$$

which explains the strong negative correlation in Figure 10.9e. It is important to be aware of the ratio correlation phenomenon because scatter plots of ratios are commonplace in geology. Two examples are the ^{87}Rb/^{86}Sr – ^{87}Sr/^{86}Sr data from the beginning of this chapter, and the Zr-Zr/Y tectonic discrimination diagrams of igneous geochemistry.

10.5 Weighted regression

The least squares regression algorithm of Sections 10.2 and 10.3 assumed that the residuals (ϵ_i in Equation 10.3) followed a normal distribution with zero mean and equal standard deviation. Using statistical jargon, we assumed that the data are *homoscedastic*. However, real datasets are often **heteroscedastic**, i.e. their standard deviation varies between aliquots.

Consider, for example, the case of (Rb–Sr) isochron regression. It is based on ^{87}Rb/^{86}Sr and ^{87}Sr/^{86}Sr isotope measurements that are obtained by mass spectrometry. The uncertainties of these measurements may vary significantly between aliquots. And due to the spurious correlation issue of Section 10.4.3, these uncertainties may be correlated. To illustrate the effect of these complications, consider a simple three-point example:

i	X	Y	x	$s[x]$	y	$s[y]$	$s[x,y]$
1	10	20	10.5	1	20.5	1	0.9
2	20	30	19.5	1	29.9	1	0.9
3	30	40	25.1	3	45.2	5	-13.5

Table 10.3: Synthetic three-aliquot dataset. X and Y the *true* values; x and y are three *measurements*, $s[x]$ and $s[y]$ their respective standard errors, and $s[x,y]$ their covariance. The uncertainties differ between the three samples, which are therefore heteroscedastic.

The uncertainties can be visualised as **error ellipses** (see Figures 7.10 and 7.13):

Figure 10.10: Synthetic data of Table 10.3. The white squares are the true population values (X and Y) of three aliquots . The black squares are three measurements (x and y). The ellipses represent 95% confidence regions for bivariate normal distributions with means x and y, and (co)variances $s[x]$, $s[y]$ and $s[x,y]$. The true values fall on a line with intercept $\beta_0 = 10$ and slope $\beta_1 = 1$ (dotted line). The unweighted least squares fit (dashed line) has an intercept of $\beta_0 = 1.9$ and slope $\beta_1 = 1.63$. This poor result is entirely due to the third data point, whose disproportionally large uncertainties are not properly accounted for by the ordinary least squares regression algorithm.

In order to account for the unequal uncertainties of the three aliquots, we need to replace the likelihood function of the unweighted regression algorithm (Equation 10.11):

$$\mathcal{L}(\beta_0, \beta_1, \sigma | x_1, y_1, \ldots, x_n, y_n) = \prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left[-\frac{(y_i - \beta_0 - \beta_1 x_i)^2}{2\sigma^2} \right]$$

with a different function that is based on the bivariate normal distribution (Equation 7.7):

$$\mathcal{L}_w(\beta_0, \beta_1, \boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_n | x_1, y_1, \ldots, x_n, y_n) =$$
$$\prod_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{|\Sigma_i|}} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} x_i - \boldsymbol{x}_i \\ y_i - \beta_0 - \beta_1\boldsymbol{x}_i \end{bmatrix}^T \Sigma_i^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} x_i - \boldsymbol{x}_i \\ y_i - \beta_0 - \beta_1\boldsymbol{x}_i \end{bmatrix} \right) \quad (10.22)$$

where $\boldsymbol{x}_1, \ldots, \boldsymbol{x}_n$ are the *fitted* values for the independent variable x. This is the most likely value for X given the measurement x and the analytical uncertainties. The $\boldsymbol{x}$-values must be estimated from the data along with the intercept (β_0) and slope (β_1) of the regression model. Equation 10.22 can be maximised numerically.

Figure 10.11: a) the same as Figure 10.10, but with the weighted regression result added as a solid line. Its intercept is $\beta_0 = 9.4$ and its slope is $\beta_1 = 1.05$. These values are much closer to the true values (dotted line) than the ordinary least squares solution (dashed line) is. b) Zooming into aliquot 3 shows the true value of the independent variable (X_3), its measured value (x_3), and the fitted value $\boldsymbol{x}_3$.

Chapter 11

Fractals and chaos

The United States Geological Survey (USGS) hosts a catalog[1] of global earthquakes. Here is a histogram of the 20,000 most recent earthquakes with magnitude 4.5 or greater, which was downloaded when this text was written.
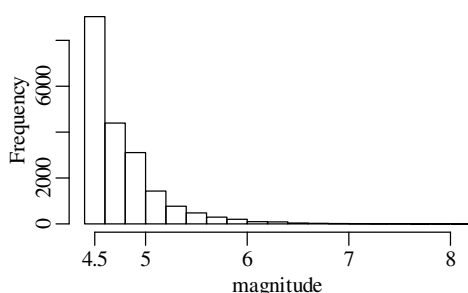
Figure 11.1: Histogram for 20,000 recent earthquakes of magnitude ≥ 4.5 from the USGS earthquake catalog.

This distribution is negatively skewed (section 3.3), and therefore has a similar appearance as the clast size distribution of Figure 2.11. Recall that the skewness of the clast size distribution caused the mean and the median to be very different (Figure 3.2). This problem was solved by a simple logarithmic transformation (Figure 2.12). After taking logs, the skewed distribution of clast sizes became symmetric (section 2.4). In fact, we could apply a χ^2- or Kolmogorov-Smirnov test to show that the log of the clast sizes follows a normal distribution. This type of skewed distribution, which becomes normal after taking logarithms, is called a **lognormal** distribution. Let's see if this procedure also works for the earthquake data:
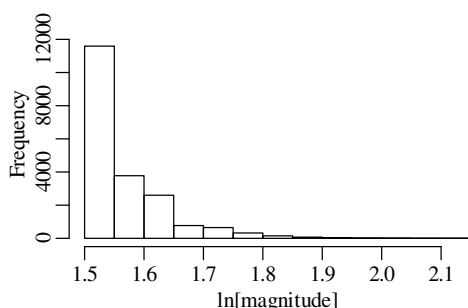
Figure 11.2: The histogram of the logarithm of the 20,000 earthquakes in Figure 11.1 is still negatively skewed.

The logarithmic transformation has not reduced the skewness of the data. This means that the earthquake magnitudes do not follow a lognormal distribution. And it also means that logarithms cannot fix the discrepancy between the mean and the median. In fact the distribution

---

[1]https://earthquake.usgs.gov/earthquakes/search/

of earthquake magnitudes *does not have a well-defined mean or median.* This phenomenon is very common in geology.

11.1   Power law distributions

In our attempt to remove the skewness of the earthquake magnitude data, we ignored the fact that earthquake magnitudes are already a logarithmic quantity, which can take negative values. In fact we will see that most seismic events have negative magnitudes! So instead of taking the logarithm of the earthquake magnitudes, let us take the logarithm of the frequencies:
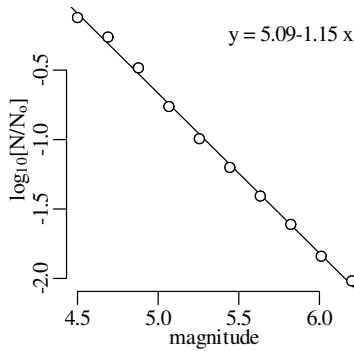
Figure 11.3:   Bivariate scatter plot of $y = \log_{10}[N/N_\circ]$ against earthquake magnitude, where N is the number of earthquakes exceeding a given magnitude and $N_\circ$ is the total number of earthquakes, which is 20,000 for the dataset of Figure 11.1.

The transformed data plot on a straight line of the form

$$\log_{10}[N/N_\circ] = a + b \text{ magnitude} \tag{11.1}$$

where $a = 5.09$ and $b = -1.15$. Equation 11.1 is called the **Gutenberg-Richter Law** and is a mainstay of seismology. It is tremendously useful for predictive purposes. Given a record of small seismic events, the Gutenberg-Richter Law allows accurate predictions of seismic hazards posed by larger events. For example, given that the 20,000 earthquakes of Figure 11.1 span a continuous period of 1031 days, we can use Equation 11.1 to predict the likelihood that an earthquake of magnitude 9.0 or greater will happen within the next year:

1. The expected number of earthquakes per year is

$$\frac{20000 \text{ earthquakes}}{1031 \text{ days}} \times 365 \text{ days} = 7080 \text{ earthquakes}$$

2. Plugging magnitude 9.0 into Equation 11.1:

$$\log_{10}[N/N_\circ] = 5.09 - 1.15 \ \times 9.0 = -5.26$$

3. Rearranging for N:

$$N = 7080 \times 10^{-5.26} = 0.039$$

In other words, there is a 3.9% chance that at least one magnitude earthquake 9.0 or greater earthquake happens per year. This is equivalent to 1 such event occurring per 25 years, or 4 events occurring per century. If we look at the last magnitude ≥ 9.0 earthquakes of the past century:

location	Japan	Sumatra	Alaska	Chile	Kamchatka
year	2011	2004	1964	1960	1952
magnitude	9.1	9.2	9.2	9.5	9.0

then that amounts to 5 events. This seems to indicate that the short term earthquake record can indeed be used to make long term predictions.

Power-law relationships are found in many other geoscience fields. For example, in hydrology:
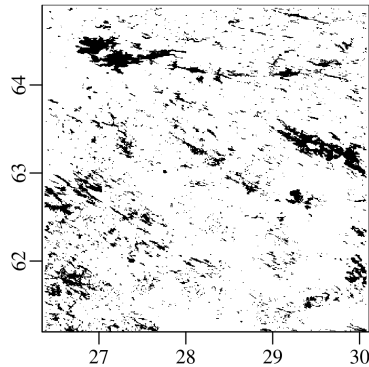
Figure 11.4: A map of central Finland (axis labels mark latitude and longitude), with water marked in black and land marked in white. Finland is also known as "the land of a thousand lakes". But in fact there are far more than 1000 lakes in Finland. The small area shown in this figure already contains 2327 of them. Most of these lakes are small, but there are also a few big ones that cover an area of more than 1000 km^2.

The size-frequency relationship of Finnish lakes looks very similar to the Gutenberg-Richter Law of earthquakes:
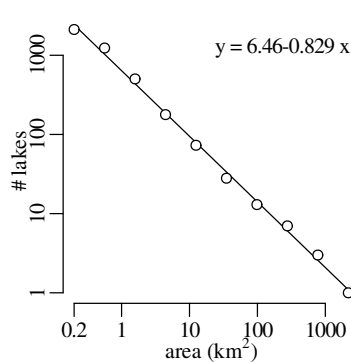
Figure 11.5: Plotting the number of lakes exceeding a certain size against that size on a log-log scale yields a linear array of points similar to the Gutenberg-Richter Law of Figure 11.3. Extrapolating this trend towards the left would reveal that there are millions of puddles in Finland.

Other examples of similar power law relationships in the Earth Sciences include the size-frequency distributions of faults and joints, clasts in glacial till, oil fields and ore deposits, rivers and their tributaries, mountains and floods, to name just a few.

11.2 How long is the coast of Britain?

In a famous paper[2], Benoit Mandelbrot showed that it is impossible to unequivocally pin down the circumference of Britain. The answer depends on the length of the measuring rod:

| length = 2800km | length = 2900km | length = 3400km | length = 4580km | length = 5490km |
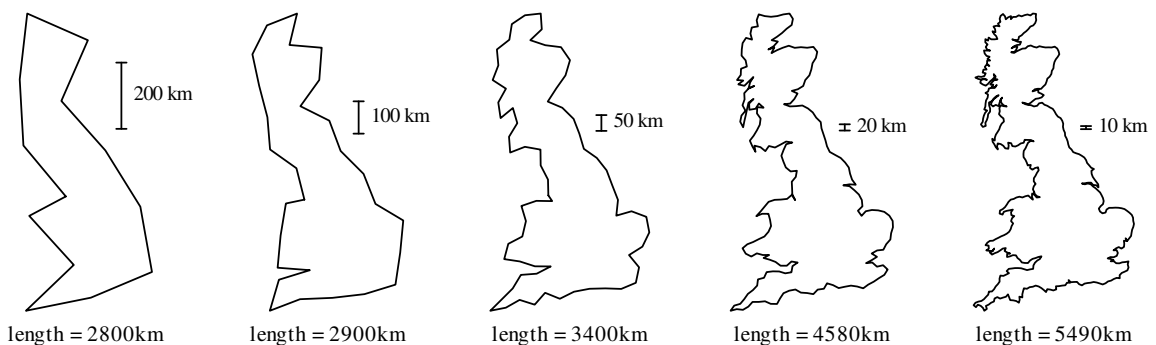
[2]Mandelbrot, B., 1967. How long is the coast of Britain? Statistical self-similarity and fractional dimension. *Science*, 156(3775), pp.636-638.

Figure 11.6: Five attempts to measure the length of Britain's coastline. Different results are obtained depending on the length of the measuring rod used for the measurements. The shorter the yardstick (shown as error bars), the longer the estimate.

However this seemingly complex phenomenon can be fully captured by a simple **power law** equation. Plotting the length of the coastline against the size of the measuring rod on a log-log scale:
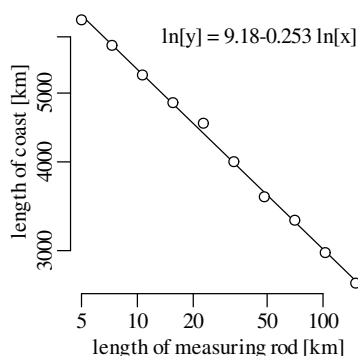
Figure 11.7: Setting out the length of the British coast line against the length of the measuring rod on a log-log scale produces a linear trend with a slope of -0.253. This line can be extrapolated to lower values to estimate the length that would be measured with even smaller measuring rods. For example, if we were to measure the British coast with a 30 cm long ruler, then this would produce a result of

$$\exp(9.18 - 0.253\ln[3 \times 10^{-4}]) = 42,060 \text{ km!}$$

An alternative (and equivalent) way to plot the data is to divide the measured length of the coastline by the length of the measuring rod to obtain the number of linear segments that approximate the British coast. Plotting this number against the length of the measuring rod on a log-log plot also produces a straight line:
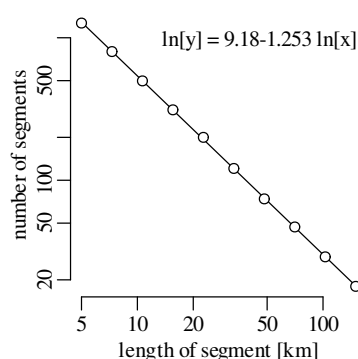
Figure 11.8: The same data as Figure 11.7 but plotting the number of polygonal segments on the y-axis instead of the length of those segments. Note how the slope of the best fit line equals the slope of Figure 11.7 minus one.

Box counting is another way to obtain this result. Instead of approximating the British coast with a set of line segments, this method covers the coast with a set of boxes. Varying the box size and counting the number of boxes needed to cover the entire coast:
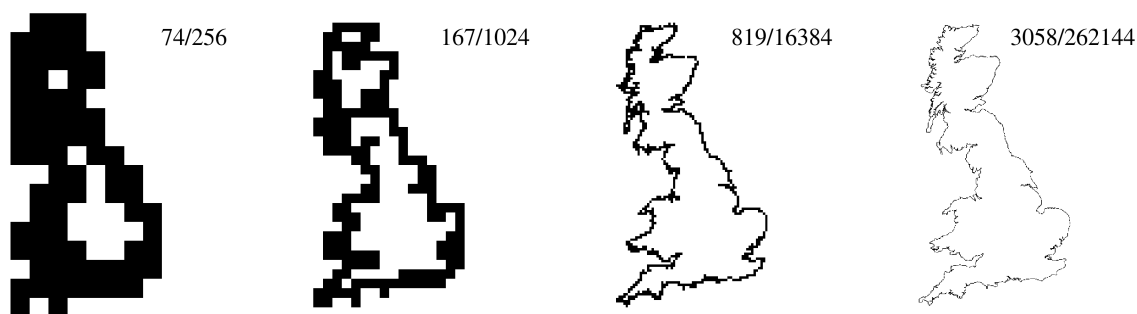
Figure 11.9: Box counting of the British coast using (from left to right) a 16×16, 32×32, 64×64, and 128×128 grid. Black squares overlap with the coastline, white squares do not. The legends in the upper right corner of each subpanel specify the number of black squares relative to the total number of squares.

Instead of plotting the number of line segments against their size, we plot the number of boxes against their size (width). This produces a linear trend that has a different intercept than Figure 11.9, but a similar slope:

Figure 11.10: Plotting the number of boxes against their size on a log-log diagram yields a linear array with a slope of -1.28. This is similar to the value obtained by the polygonal line segment method of Figure 11.8.

The box counting method is more flexible, and therefore more widely used, than the line segment method. For example, applying the same technique to a river network:

Figure 11.11: Box counting of the river network on the island of Corsica (France). Black boxes overlap with rivers, white boxes do not. Legends are as in Figure 11.9.

and visualising the results on a log-log plot:
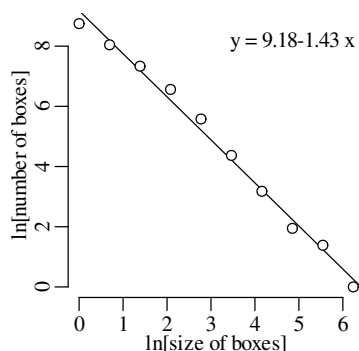
Figure 11.12: Log-log plot of the box counting results of Figure 11.11. The power law appears to be a law of nature.

11.3   Fractals

This section will introduce some simple geometric patterns that match the statistical properties of geological patterns such as the coastlines, lakes and river networks of section 11.2. The first of these synthetic patterns is the **Koch curve**, which is created by a simple **recursive algorithm**.

Figure 11.13: A 1st order Koch curve is constructed by (1) dividing a straight line segment into three segments of equal length; (2) drawing an equilateral triangle that has the middle segment from step 1 as its base and points outward; and (3) removing the line segment that is the base of the triangle from step 2.

Figure 11.14: A 2nd order Koch curve is derived from a 1st order Koch curve by replacing each straight line segment in the 1st order curve with a scaled down version of that 1st order curve.

Figure 11.15: A 3rd order Koch curve is derived from a 2nd order Koch curve by replacing each straight line segment in the 2nd order curve with a scaled down version of the 1st order Koch curve.

Figure 11.16: This is a 6th order Koch curve, which is generated by replacing each straight line segment in a 5th order curve with a scaled down version of the 1st order curve.

This procedure can be repeated *ad infinitum*, producing an intricate curve that is endlessly detailed. It is similar in many ways to the British coast line, which also produces ever more detail as we zoom into the map. Measuring the length of a Koch curve presents the same difficulty as measuring the length of the British coastline: the answer depends on the length of the measuring rod. Applying the box counting method to the Koch curve:

Figure 11.17: Box counting of the 6th order Koch curve. The larger the boxes, the fewer of them are needed to cover the entire curve. The recursive order of the Koch curve can be increased indefinitely, and so does the number of small boxes needed to cover them.

Plotting the results on a frequency-magnitude log-log plot:
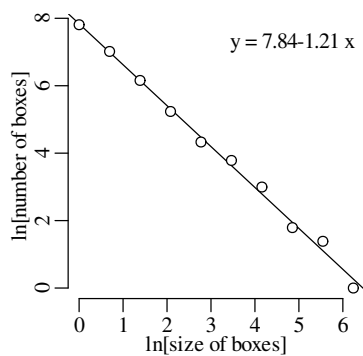
Figure 11.18: Log-log plot setting out the number of boxes needed to cover the 6th order Koch curve of Figure 11.16 against the size of those boxes. The best fitting line has a slope of 1.21, which is similar to the slope of the box-counting results for the British coastline (Figure 11.10).

The similarity of Figures 11.10 and 11.18 suggest that the Koch curve serves as an *artificial coastline*. The Koch curve is just one of many artificial fractals. Here is another one:

Figure 11.19: The **Sierpinski carpet** is generated using a recursive algorithm that is built on a grid of eight black squares surrounding a white square. Each level of recursion replaces each black square by the same pattern. From left to right, this figure shows the first four levels of recursion for this algorithm. The end result is an arrangement of small and large holes that shares many characteristics with the size distribution of Finnish lakes shown in Figure 11.4.

One thing that the Koch curve and Sierpinski carpet have in common is their **self-similarity**. Their level of complexity remains the same regardless of scale. Whether one zooms in or out of the picture, the complexity remains the same.

Because it consists of boxes, the Sierpinski carpet is ideally suited for box counting. We can either cover the black areas with boxes, or do the same with the white areas. Here is the resulting log-log plot:
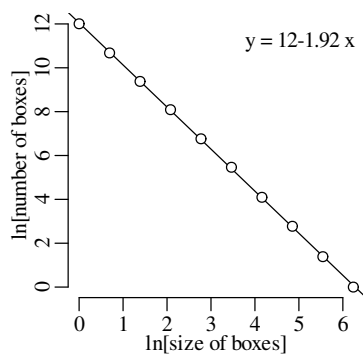
Figure 11.20: Log-log plot of the box counting results for the Sierpinski carpet. This pattern in ideally suited for box counting, resulting in a perfect linear fit. Note how the slope of the best fitting line (1.92) is higher than that of the Koch curve (slope=1.21). It is similar to the slope that would be obtained by box-counting the Finnish lakes of Figure 11.4, which similar to $1 - x$ where x is the slope of the size-frequency plot of the Finnish lakes (Figure 11.5).

Mathematically, the linear fit of the log-log plots can written as

$$\ln[\text{number of boxes}] = C + D \times \ln[\text{size of boxes}] \tag{11.2}$$

The slope of the line (D) is also known as the **fractal dimension** of the pattern. It is called a *dimension* because it has all the characteristics of the spatial dimensions, which can be used to chacterise a point ($D = 0$), a line ($D = 1$), a plane ($D = 2$) or a cube ($D = 3$). But whereas these traditional notions of dimension are tied to integer numbers, the dimensionality of fractals is quantified by a non-integer *fraction*.

The fractal dimension of a Koch curve is $D = 1.21$ (Figure 11.18). This is a number between $D = 1$ (a line) and $D = 2$ (a plane). It reflects the intricate curvature of the Koch curve, which partly 'fills' the 2-dimensional plane. The Sierpinski carpet has a fractal dimension of $D = 1.92$. This number, too, falls between the dimensionalities of a line and a plane. But it is more similar to a plane than it is to a line.

Other shapes exist that have fractal dimensions between $0 < D < 1$ or between $2 < D < 3$. Consider, for example, the **Cantor set**:

Figure 11.21: The Cantor set is generated using a recursive algorithm that is built on a line segment whose middle third is removed. Each level of recursion replaces each black line by the same pattern. From top to bottom, this figure shows the first five levels of recursion for this algorithm.

Plotting the size distribution of the Cantor set on a log-log scale:

Figure 11.22: The y-axis shows the number of linear segments in the Cantor set that exceed the length shown on the x-axis. The values form a power law with a fractal dimension of $D = 0.68$. In fact it can be shown that the exact value is $D = \ln[2]/\ln[3]$. With a fractal dimension between zero and one, the Cantor set falls somewhere between a point and a line.

11.4 Chaos

Consider the following experimental setup:

Figure 11.23: A pendulum is swinging above three magnets. The force (F_m) exerted on the pendulum scales with the square of its bob's distance ($|d|$) to the magnets ($F_m(i) \propto 1/|d(i)|^2$, where $1 \leq i \leq 3$ marks each of the magnets). The pendulum slows down due to friction ($F_f(i) \propto v$ where v is the velocity of the bob) and eventually comes to a standstill above one of the magnets. On this figure it has done so above the first magnet.

Despite the simplicity of this setup, it can lead to some complex behaviour.
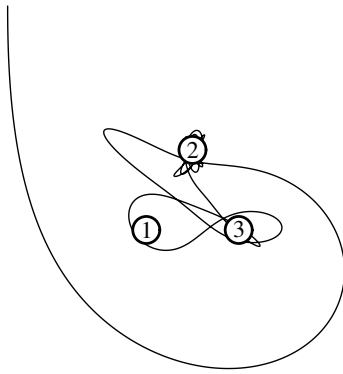
Figure 11.24: This figure shows the three magnet configuration of Figure 11.23 in map view. The black line marks the trajectory of the pendulum after it was pushed southward from a position towards the northeast of the three magnets. After describing a circular motion, the bob of the pendulum accelerates towards the second magnet, gets deflected by it, and slows down. It then heads towards the third magnet and the first magnet before returning to the second magnet and coming to a standstill there.

Moving the initial position of the bob slightly to the south of the previous position results in a different outcome:
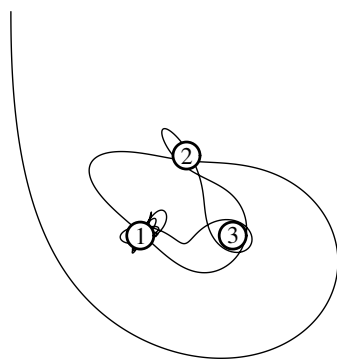
Figure 11.25: The experimental setup shown in this figure is nearly identical to that of Figure 11.24. The only difference is a slight offset of the initial position. The first stage of the resulting trajectory is nearly identical to that of Figure 11.24. The bob makes a circular motion towards the second magnet and decelerates. But after passing the second magnet, its course diverges from the first experiment. It moves towards the first magnet, to the third magnet and then back to the first magnet before coming to a standstill. Thus, the slight difference in initial position has produced a completely different end result.

We can repeat the experiment for any other initial position. Evaluating the outcomes along a 512×512 grid of initial values:
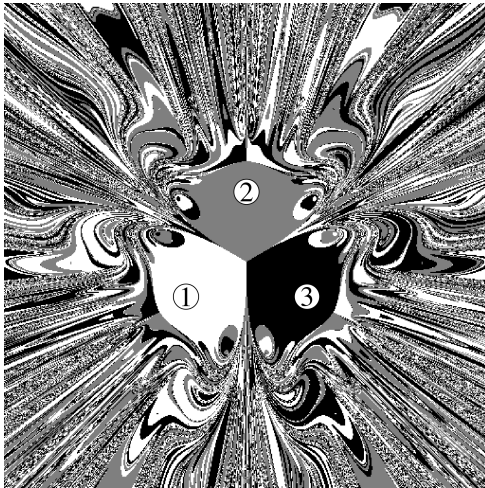
Figure 11.26: This intricate picture colour codes the initial positions of the magnetic pendulum experiment according to its outcomes. White, grey and black pixels in this 512×512 image mark initial positions that resulted in a final position at the first, second and third magnet, respectively. The resulting pattern is simple in the immediate vicinity of the magnets, but complex at a further distance. It has all the characteristics of a fractal, exhibiting the same level of complexity regardless of scale. The pattern is determinisitic in the sense that the same grid of initial conditions produces exactly the same pattern. But it is chaotic because even tiny changes in the initial positions or velocity may produce completely different patterns.

The strong sensitivity of the outcome on the initial conditions of the magnetic pendulum experiments is the hallmark of **deterministic chaos**. It is the phenomenon whereby "the present determines the future, but the approximate present does not approximately determine the future".

The magnetic pendulum is just one example of a simple system of *coupled equations* that produces complex outcomes. It is a geologically relevant example, because the gravitational interaction between the planets and moons in our solar system produces similar chaotic behaviour. The interplay between the multitude of gravitational fields in our solar system is responsible for the ejection of meteors from the asteroid belt, which have been linked to some of the largest mass extinctions in the history of life. Gravitational interactions also destabilise the orbital parameters of planets such as Mars. The obliquity of Mars' spin axis is chaotic. Its evolution can be predicted thousands of years into the future, but becomes unpredictable over million year timescales. Rapid changes in the obliquity of Mars have caused its polar ice caps to shift over time.

Chaos theory originates from the work of atmospheric scientist Edward Lorenz. Lorenz formulated a simplified mathematical model for atmospheric convection, based on three *deterministic* equations. Like the three magnets of the pendulum example, the interactions between the three Lorenz equations produced outcomes that were extremely sensitive to the initial conditions. Lorenz called this the **butterfly effect**.

In the magnetic pendulum example there were just three outcomes, but in the real world there are countless numbers of them. The butterfly effect raises the theoretical possibility that the flap of a butterfly's wings in Brazil may change the initial conditions of the global atmosphere and thereby cause a tornado in Texas. Of course the vast majority of butterfly wingflaps won't have this outcome, but some of them may. The outcome is impossible to predict far in advance. This phenomenon limits the ability of meteorologists to forecast the weather more than 10 days in advance.

Chapter 12

Unsupervised learning

The simple plots of chapter 2 are useful for visualising simple datasets of one or two dimensions. However many Earth Science datasets span multiple dimensions. For example, a geochemist may have measured the concentration of 20 elements in 50 samples; or a palaeoecologist may have counted the relative abundances of 15 species at 30 sites. This chapter will introduce some tools that can help us see some structure in such 'big' datasets without any prior knowledge of clusters, groupings or trends. This is called unsupervised learning, as opposed to the supervised learning algorithms that will be introduced in Chapter 13.

12.1 Principal Component Analysis

Principal Component Analysis (PCA) is an exploratory data analysis method that takes a high dimensional dataset as input and produces a lower (typically two-) dimensional 'projection' as output. PCA is closely related to Multidimensional Scaling (MDS), which is introduced in Section 12.2. To explain the mathematical mechanism behind PCA, let us begin with a simple toy example. Consider the following bivariate (a and b) dataset of three (1, 2 and 3) samples:

$$X = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array} \begin{array}{cc} a & b \\ \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 7 \\ 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \end{array} \tag{12.1}$$

Displaying these three points on a scatter diagram reveals that two of the three samples plot close together while the third one plots further away:
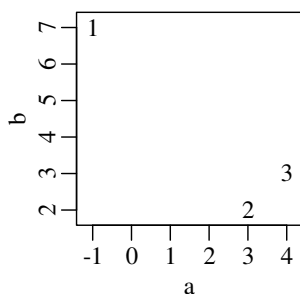
Figure 12.1: Simple toy example of three samples that can be visualised on a two-dimensional scatter plot. There is no need to use unsupervised learning in this case. But we will use this simple dataset as a toy example to understand how Principal Component Analysis works.

Imagine that you live in a one-dimensional world and cannot see the spatial distribution of the three points represented by X. Then PCA allows us to visualise the two-dimensional data as a one-dimensional array of numbers. This can be achieved by decomposing X into four matrices

$(C, S, V$ and $D)$:

$$X = 1_{3,1} \ C + S \ V \ D$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -1.15 & 0 \\ 0.58 & -1 \\ 0.58 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3.67 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.71 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0.71 & -0.71 \\ 0.71 & 0.71 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (12.2)$$

where C is the centre (arithmetic mean) of the two data columns; S are the *normalised scores*;
the diagonals of V correspond to the standard deviations of the two principal components; and
D is a rotation matrix (the *principal directions*). S, V and D can be recombined to define two
more matrices:

$$P = S \ V = \begin{bmatrix} -4.24 & 0 \\ 2.12 & -0.71 \\ 2.12 & 0.71 \end{bmatrix}, \qquad (12.3)$$

$$\text{and } L = V \ D = \begin{bmatrix} 2.6 & -2.6 \\ 0.5 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (12.4)$$

where P is a matrix of transformed coordinates (the *principal components* or *scores*) and L are
the scaled eigenvectors or *loadings*. Figure 12.2 annotates Figure 12.1 with key elements of the
PCA matrix decomposition:

Figure 12.2: PCA decomposition of Figure 12.1. The data X are shown
as numbers, C as a square, and $1_{2,1}C \pm L$ as a cross. The first princi-
pal direction (running from the upper left to the lower right) has been
stretched by a factor of $(3.67/0.71) = 5.2$ w.r.t the second principal di-
rection, which runs perpendicular to it.

Projecting the data onto the principal directions of Figure 12.2 yields the desired one-
dimensional simplification of the data:
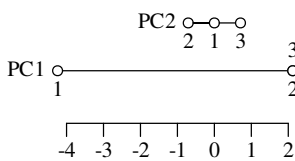
Figure 12.3: Projection of the three data points on the two principal
directions yields two principal components (P in Equation 12.3), repre-
senting a one dimensional representation of the two-dimensional data

Using the diagonal elements of the matrix V in Equation 12.2, we can show that the first prin-
cipal component ($PC1$) captures $3.67^2/(3.67^2 + 0.71^2) = 96\%$ of the variance in the dataset, and
the second principal component ($PC2$) accounts for the remaining $0.71^2/(3.67^2 + 0.71^2) = 4\%$ of
the variance. So relatively little information is lost by discarding $PC2$. Then $PC1$ tells us that,
to a first approximation, sample 1 is very different from samples 2 and 3, which are identical to
each other. $PC2$ then captures the remaining information, which shows that samples 2 and 3
are, in fact, not exactly identical. In the second principal direction, sample 1 falls in between
samples 2 and 3.

The matrix decomposition of Equation 12.2 contains information about both the samples
(1, 2 and 3) and the variables (a and b). This information is contained in the principal compo-

nents (P, Equation 12.3) and the loadings (L, Equation 12.4), respectively. We can graphically combine all this information in a **biplot**:
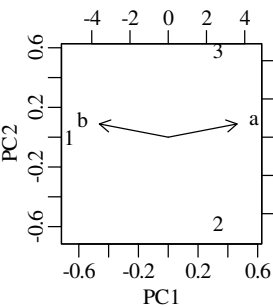
Figure 12.4: A biplot of both principal components along with the loadings of the two variables shown as arrows. The first principal component shows that the most important difference is that between sample 1 (which is rich in b and poor in a) and samples 2 & 3 (which are poor in b and rich in a). The second principal component captures the remaining variance, with sample 3 begin slightly richer in a and b than sample 2.

Although the two-dimensional example is useful for illustrative purposes, the true value of PCA obviously lies in higher dimensional situations. As a second example, let us consider one of R's built-in datasets:

	Murder	Assault	Rape	UrbanPop
Alabama	13.2	236	21.2	58
Alaska	10.0	263	44.5	48
Arizona	8.1	294	31.0	80
Arkansas	8.8	190	19.5	50
California	9.0	276	40.6	91
Colorado	7.9	204	38.7	78
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
Wisconsin	2.6	53	10.8	66
Wyoming	6.8	161	15.6	60

Table 12.1: `USArrests` is a dataset that is built into the R programming environment. It contains crime statistics (in arrests per 100,000 residents) for murder, assault and rape in each of the 50 US states in 1973. Also given is the percentage of the population living in urban areas. Thus, `USArrests` is a four-column table that cannot readily be visualised on a two-dimensional surface.

Applying PCA to Table 12.1 yields four principal components, the first two of which represent 62% and 25% of the total variance, respectively. Visualising the PCA results as a biplot:
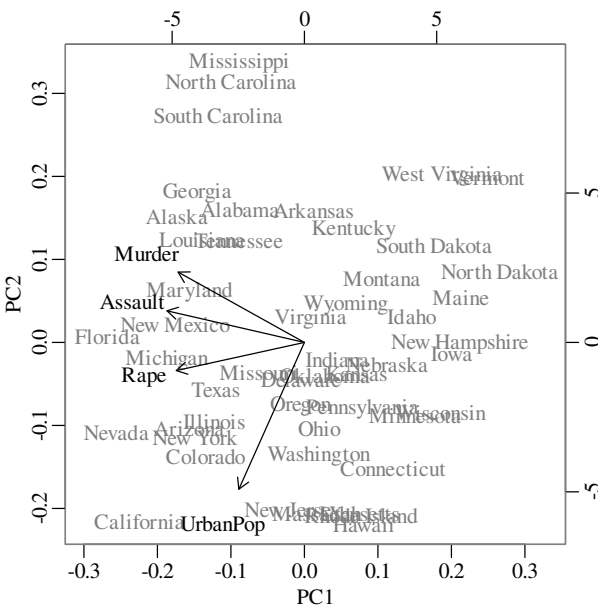
Figure 12.5: PCA biplot of American crime statistics. The grey labels mark the different states, whilst the black vectors mark the crimes and the percentage of the population that lives in urban areas. States that have a lot of crime plot on the left hand side of the diagram, states with little crime plot towards the right. Heavily urbanised states plot at the bottom of the diagram, rural states plot near the top.

States that plot close together (such as West Virginia & Vermont, or Arizona & New York, etc.) have similar crime and urbanisation statistics. States that plot at opposite ends of the

diagram (such as Mississipi & California, or North Dakota & Florida) have contrasting crime and urbanisation statistics. The vectors for murder, assault and rape all point in approximately the same direction, towards the left hand side of the diagram. This tells us that the crimes are all correlated with each other. So states that have a lot of assaults (such as Florida), also have a lot of rape and murder. States that plot on the right hand side of the diagram (such as North Dakota), have low crime statistics in all categories. The vector with the urban population (`UrbanPop`) is perpendicular to the crime vectors. This tells us that crime and degree of urbanisation are not correlated in the United States.

12.2   Multidimensional Scaling

Multidimensional Scaling (MDS) is a multivariate **ordination** technique that is similar in many ways to PCA. MDS aims to extract two (or higher) dimensional 'maps' from tables of pairwise distances between objects. Let us illustrate the method with the same synthetic dataset of Equation 12.1. Using the Euclidean distance ($d[i,j]$, where $1 \leq i, j \leq 3$):

$$d[i,j] = \sqrt{(a[i] - a[j])^2 + (b[i] - b[j])^2} \tag{12.5}$$

we can populate a 3×3 table of distances:

$$d = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array} \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ \left[\begin{array}{ccc} 0 & 6.4 & 6.4 \\ 6.4 & 0 & 1.4 \\ 6.4 & 1.4 & 0 \end{array}\right] \end{array} \tag{12.6}$$

Table 12.6 has the following properties:

1. **symmetry**: $d[i,j] = d[j,i]$; for example, the distance from sample 1 to 3 equals the distance from samples 3 and 1.

2. **non-negativity**: $d[i,j] \geq 0$ and $d[i,j] = 0$ if $i = j$; for example, the distance between sample 2 and itself is zero.

3. **triangle inequality**: $d[i,j] + d[j,k] \geq d[i,k]$; for example, the sum of the distance from sample 1 to 2 and the distance from sample 1 to 3 is $6.4 + 6.4 = 12.8$ km, which is greater than the distance from sample 2 to 3 (1.4).

Given a table of this form, MDS reconstructs the original set of plot coordinates:

$$m = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array} \begin{array}{cc} x & y \\ \left[\begin{array}{cc} 4.24 & 0 \\ -2.12 & -0.71 \\ -2.12 & 0.71 \end{array}\right] \end{array} \tag{12.7}$$

Note that Equation 12.7 is identical to Equation 12.3 apart from the sign of the x-column. So in this example MDS is essentially identical to PCA. The only difference is that MDS takes a table of distances as input, whereas PCA uses the raw data. This makes MDS more flexible than PCA. As a second (non-trivial) example, consider the following table of pairwise distances between European cities:

	Athens	Barcelona	Brussels	...	Rome	Stockholm	Vienna
Athens	0	3313	2963	...	817	3927	1991
Barcelona	3313	0	1326	...	1460	2868	1802
Brussels	2963	1318	0	...	1511	1616	1175
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋱	⋮	⋮	⋮
Rome	817	1460	1511	...	0	2707	1209
Stockholm	3927	2868	1616	...	2707	0	2105
Vienna	1991	1802	1175	...	1209	2105	0

Figure 12.6: Table of road distances (in km) between European cities. The full dataset comprises 21 cities.

Plugging this table into an MDS algorithm produces the following output:

Figure 12.7: MDS configuration of the European city distance data (Table 12.6). Cities (such as Lyon and Geneva) that are close together in the real world plot close together on the MDS configuration. And cities (such as Stockholm and Athens) that are far apart in the real world plot on opposite ends of the MDS configuration. But whilst the MDS configuration preserves the distances, it does not preserve the orientation of the cities. In this figure, the y-axis has been flipped, and the city locations are rotated $\sim 15°$ in a clockwise sense compared to the real map of Europe.

We can measure the distances between the cities on the MDS map (in cm, inches or any other unit) and plot them against the input distances (in km) from Table 12.6. This produces a so-called **Shepard plot**:
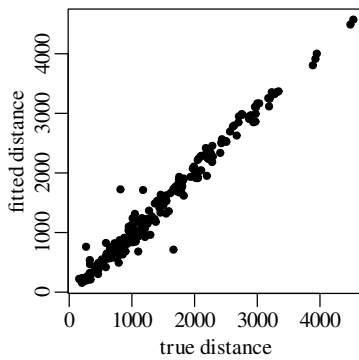
Figure 12.8: The Shepard plot of the European city distances shows a good agreement between the true input distances from Table 12.6 (x-axis) and the fitted distances measured on the MDS configuration of Figure 12.7 (y-axis). There are 21 cities in the dataset, resulting in $21 \times 20/2 = 210$ pairwise distances. Hence there are 210 data points on this scatter plot. Most of the scatter of the data around the best fit line is caused by the fact that the input data are *road distances*, which do not perfectly agree with the straight line map distances.

The scatter of the fitted data relative to the true distances can be quantified as the **Stress**:

$$S = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\sum_{j=i+1}^{n}(f(d[i,j]) - \delta[i,j])^2}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\sum_{j=i+1}^{n}\delta[i,j]^2}} \tag{12.8}$$

where $d[i,j]$ is the input distance between objects i and j (for example the Euclidean distance of Equation 12.6), $\delta[i,j]$ is the fitted distance measured on the MDS configuration, and f is a monotonic transformation that essentially maps $d[i,j]$ to the same scale as $\delta[i,j]$. The European

city distance dataset is characterised by a Stress values of 7.5%, which corresponds to a 'good' fit:

fit	poor	fair	good	excellent	perfect
S	0.2	0.1	0.05	0.025	0

Table 12.2: Rule of thumb for interpreting the goodness of fit of an MDS configuration.

So far we have only discussed the graphical output of MDS, but we have not yet explained how this output is produced. It turns out that there are several ways to do so. In its simplest form (**classical MDS**), MDS consists of a simple sequence of matrix operations that are similar in many ways to the PCA algorithm outlined in Equations 12.2, 12.3 and 12.4. An alternative and more widely used approach (**nonmetric MDS**) uses an iterative gradient search algorithm to minimise Equation 12.8.

Nonmetric MDS is more flexible than classical MDS because it accommodates unconventional 'dissimilarity' measures that do not necessarily have to behave like conventional distances. So instead of physical distances expressed in kilometres or miles, we can also use MDS to interpret differences in chemical concentration, density, degree of correlation, and many other numerical quantities. Consider, for example, the detrital zircon U–Pb geochronology data of Section 9.8. Figure 9.13 showed that we can express the 'dissimilarity' between two U–Pb age spectra using the Kolmogorov-Smirnov (K-S) statistic. Repeating this exercise for a collection of 13 samples yields a 13×13 matrix of K-S values:

$$
d = \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc}
1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & \boxed{5} & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9 & 10 & L & T & \boxed{Y}
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c}
1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ \boxed{5} \\ 6 \\ 7 \\ 8 \\ 9 \\ 10 \\ L \\ T \\ \boxed{Y}
\end{array}
\left[\begin{array}{ccccccccccccc}
0 & 14 & 33 & 27 & 18 & 14 & 15 & 22 & 48 & 32 & 42 & 37 & 40 \\
14 & 0 & 36 & 33 & 16 & 14 & 15 & 24 & 46 & 32 & 47 & 42 & 43 \\
33 & 36 & 0 & 19 & 24 & 44 & 47 & 55 & 17 & 10 & 13 & 12 & 8 \\
27 & 33 & 19 & 0 & 20 & 38 & 41 & 48 & 28 & 14 & 21 & 17 & 16 \\
18 & 16 & 24 & 20 & 0 & 22 & 24 & 33 & 31 & 20 & 33 & 28 & \boxed{30} \\
14 & 14 & 44 & 38 & 22 & 0 & 14 & 24 & 52 & 41 & 52 & 48 & 49 \\
15 & 15 & 47 & 41 & 24 & 14 & 0 & 16 & 51 & 43 & 54 & 49 & 52 \\
22 & 24 & 55 & 48 & 33 & 24 & 16 & 0 & 61 & 53 & 63 & 59 & 62 \\
48 & 46 & 17 & 28 & 31 & 52 & 51 & 61 & 0 & 20 & 22 & 18 & 16 \\
32 & 32 & 10 & 14 & 20 & 41 & 43 & 53 & 20 & 0 & 17 & 15 & 13 \\
42 & 47 & 13 & 21 & 33 & 52 & 54 & 63 & 22 & 17 & 0 & 10 & 11 \\
37 & 42 & 12 & 17 & 28 & 48 & 49 & 59 & 18 & 15 & 10 & 0 & 7 \\
40 & 43 & 8 & 16 & \boxed{30} & 49 & 52 & 62 & 16 & 13 & 11 & 7 & 0
\end{array}\right]
\end{array}
\tag{12.9}
$$

where the K-S values have been multiplied with 100 to remove the decimal points. Square boxes mark the two samples shown in Figure 9.13. Equation 12.9 is a symmetric matrix containing positive values and a zero diagonal. Thus it fulfils all the requirements for MDS analysis:

Figure 12.9: MDS configuration of the detrital zircon U–Pb data. Samples that have similar age distributions (such as 'Y' and 'T') are characterised by low K-S statistics (e.g., $d[Y,T] = 0.07$) and plot close together. Samples that have greatly differing age distributions (such as 'Y' and '8') are characterised by high K-S statistics (e.g., $d[Y,5] = 0.62$) and plot far apart on the MDS map.

12.3 K-means clustering

K-means clustering is an unsupervised learning algorithm that tries to group data based on their similarity. As the name suggests, the method requires that we pre-specify the number of clusters (k) to be found in the dataset. We will introduce this algorithm using a simple 2-dimensional dataset:

Figure 12.10: A two-dimensional dataset to illustrate the k-means clustering algorithm. There are 150 data points. In this first exercise we will try to classify them into three groups.

The k-means algorithm then proceeds as follows:

1. Randomly select three data points from the dataset and designate them as the centroids of three clusters:
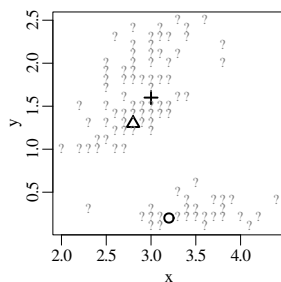
Figure 12.11: Data points 48, 100 and 130 were randomly selected from the dataset and assigned as the centroids of clusters 1 (circle), 2 (triangle) and 3 (cross).

2. Reassign each data point to the cluster whose centroid is closest to it:
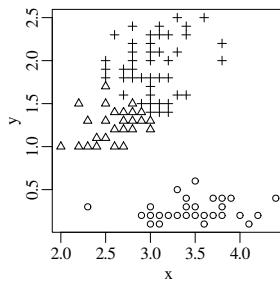
Figure 12.12: Replace each of the question marks in Figure 12.11 with the symbol (circles, triangles or crosses) that is closest to it, using the Euclidean distance of Equation 12.5.

3. Calculate a new centroid for each cluster:
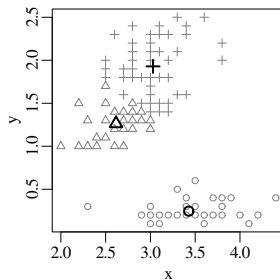
Figure 12.13: The grey symbols are the same as the black symbols in Figure 12.12. The black symbols are the average $\{x, y\}$-positions of all the samples within each cluster. These are different than the previous values shown in Figure 12.11. The new values form the centroid of the clusters that will be used in the next iteration of the k-means algorithm.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 until convergence is achieved:
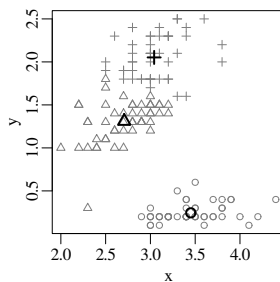
Figure 12.14: Final classification of the data. Each of the 150 data points has been assigned to a particular cluster whose centroids are marked as large and bold symbols.

The k-means algorithm can easily be generalised from two to more dimensions because the Euclidean distance (Equation 12.5) can easily generalised to any number of dimensions.

The k-means algorithm is an unsupervised learning algorithm. This means that it is meant to be applied to data for which we do not know the correct classification. However, to get an idea of the success rate of the algorithm, it is useful to apply it to a dataset for which we do know the correct answer. One dataset that is particularly useful for this purpose was first introduced to statistics by R.A. Fisher. The dataset contains the measurements in centimetres of the sepal length and width, plus the petal length and width of 50 flowers from each of 3 species of iris:

Figure 12.15: Two-dimensional marginal distributions of R.A. Fisher's iris dataset, which comprises four variables measured in 150 different flowers belonging to three different species: *setosa* (circles), *versicolor* (triangles) and *virginica* (crosses). The two-dimensional dataset of Figures 12.10–12.14 was derived from panel (4,2), which sets out Petal Width against Sepal Width. The classification shown in Figure 12.14 does a decent job at classifying the 150 flowers into three groups but the classification is not perfect. For example, the flower in the lower left corner of panel (4,2) belongs to *setosa* but was incorrectly classified as *versicolor* in Figure 12.14.

For the iris dataset, we already know which species each of the 150 flowers belongs to. We can then ignore this information and apply the k-means algorithm to the four dimensional measurements. Afterwards, we can compare the resulting classification to the true species and visualise them on a 3×3 contingency table:

cluster	setosa	versicolor	virginica
1	50	0	0
2	0	48	14
3	0	2	36

Table 12.3: Classification results of the k-means algorithm applied to Fisher's iris data.

Table 12.3 shows that all flowers of the *setosa* species were collected in the same group (cluster 1). This is not suprising when one considers that, in Figure 12.15, the circle symbols form a distinct group in all the panels. 48 out of 50 *versicolor* flowers were classified into the second cluster, with the remaining two flowers being misclassified into the third cluster. Finally, 36 out of 50 *virginica* flowers were classified into the third cluster, whilst 14 ended up in cluster 2. The difficulty in separating the *versicolor* and *virginica* flowers is caused by the overlap between their four dimensional data clouds of measurements.

12.4 Hierarchical clustering

The k-means clustering algorithm of Section 12.3 requires that we pre-specify the number of groups. It is not always obvious how to choose this number, although exercise 3 explores a method to help pick an optimal number of clusters. Hierarchical clustering is an alternative approach that builds a hierarchy from the bottom-up, and does not require us to specify the number of groups beforehand. Let us again use a simple 2-dimensional example to introduce the method:

$$X = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{array}\begin{array}{cc} x & y \\ \left[\begin{array}{cc} 6 & 90 \\ 91 & 43 \\ 17 & 95 \\ 20 & 70 \\ 80 & 6 \end{array}\right] \end{array}$$

Figure 12.16: A simple bivariate dataset that will be used to illustrate the hierarchical clustering algorithm:

The algorithm works as follows:

1. Put each data point in its own cluster and calculate the distances between them with Equation 12.5.

$$d = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{array}\begin{array}{ccccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 \\ \left[\begin{array}{ccccc} 0 & 97.1 & \boxed{12.1} & 24.4 & 112 \\ 97.1 & 0 & 90.4 & 76.0 & 38.6 \\ \boxed{12.1} & 90.4 & 0 & 25.2 & 109 \\ 24.4 & 76.0 & 25.2 & 0 & 87.7 \\ 112 & 38.6 & 109 & 87.7 & 0 \end{array}\right] \end{array}$$

2. Identify the closest two clusters (corresponding to the boxed numbers in step 1) and join them together.
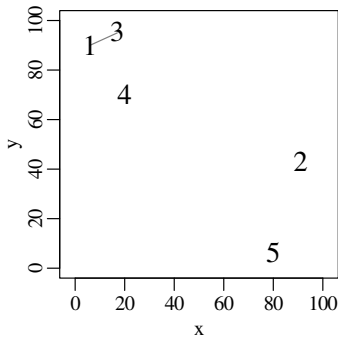
Figure 12.17: First step of the hierarchical clustering process. The closest two samples (1 and 3) have been grouped together into a new cluster (grey line, left). The results can also be visualised as a tree or **dendrogram** (right).

3. Calculate the distances between the remaining four clusters:

$$d = \begin{array}{c} \\ 13 \\ 2 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{array}\begin{array}{cccc} 13 & 2 & 4 & 5 \\ \left[\begin{array}{cccc} 0 & 97.1 & \boxed{25.2} & 112 \\ 97.1 & 0 & 76.0 & 38.6 \\ \boxed{25.2} & 76.0 & 0 & 87.7 \\ 112 & 38.6 & 87.7 & 0 \end{array}\right] \end{array}$$

where the distance between cluster 13 and the other points is calculated as

$$d[13, i] = \max(d[1, i], d[3, i]) \text{ for } i \in \{2, 4, 5\}$$

4. Identify the closest two clusters (corresponding to the boxed numbers in step 3) and join them together.
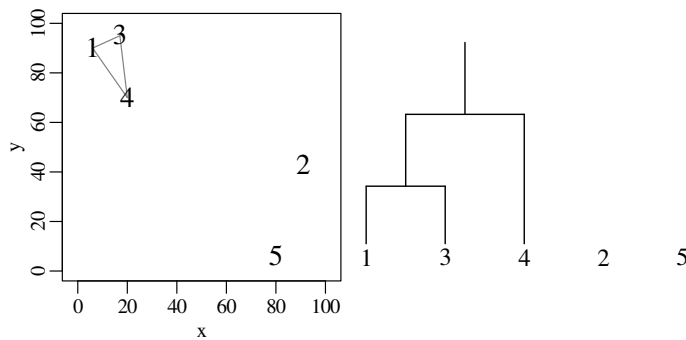
Figure 12.18: The second step of the hierarchical clustering process shown as a scatter plot (left) and a dendrogram (right). The first order cluster is nested inside the second order one.

5. Calculate the distance between the remaining three clusters:

$$d = \begin{array}{c} \\ 134 \\ 2 \\ 5 \end{array} \begin{array}{ccc} 134 & 2 & 5 \\ \left[\begin{array}{ccc} 0 & 97.1 & 112 \\ 97.1 & 0 & \boxed{76.0} \\ 112 & \boxed{76.0} & 0 \end{array}\right] \end{array}$$

6. Identify the two closest clusters (corresponding to the boxed numbers in step 5) and join them together:
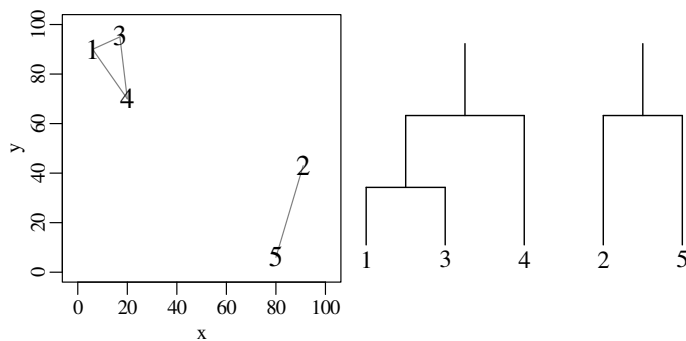
Figure 12.19: The third step of the hierarchical clustering process shown as a scatter plot (left) and a dendrogram (right). The third cluster does not share any elements with the first two clusters.

7. The final iteration yields the following tree:
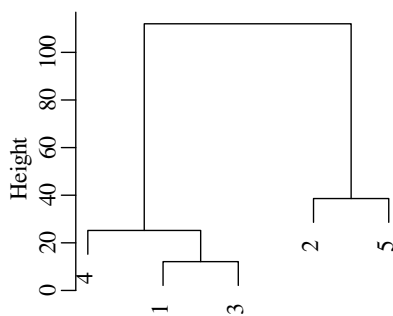
Figure 12.20: Final results of the hierarchical cluster analysis. The tree consists of four nested clusters. The y-axis has units of distance: the longer the branch, the greater the difference between the corresponding clusters.

Applying the same algorithm to Fisher's iris datasets produces a tree with 150 'leaves', each corresponding to a single flower:
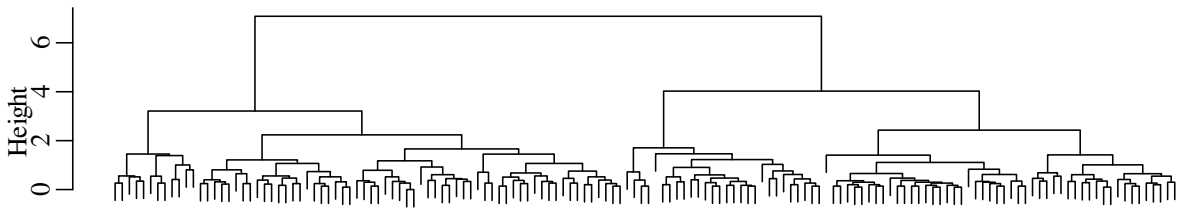
Figure 12.21: Hierarchical clustering tree of R.A. Fisher's iris data. Labels have been omitted to reduce clutter.

Recall that the 'height' of the tree corresponds to the maximum possible distance between points belonging to two different clusters. The height changes rapidly between one and three clusters, indicating that these correspond to the most significant bifurcations. So let us 'cut down' the tree at this level:
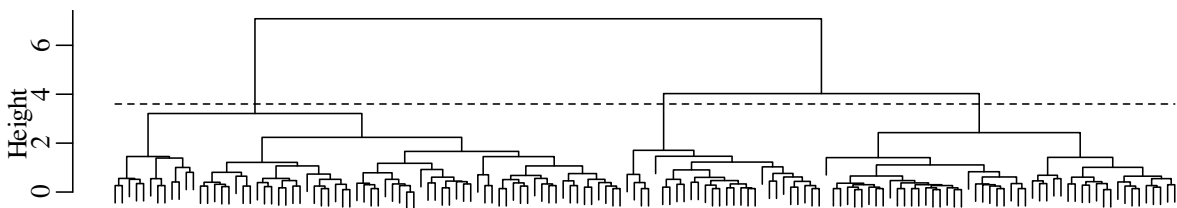
Figure 12.22: Cutting the tree at height=3.6 (dashed line) produces a simple tree with three branches, which can be used to classify the iris flowers into three groups.

Given that we know the species of all 150 iris flowers in the dataset, we can assess the performance using a contingency table, just like Table 12.3:

cluster	setosa	versicolor	virginica
1	50	0	0
2	0	23	49
3	0	27	1

Table 12.4: Classification results of the hierarchical clustering algorithm applied to Fisher's iris data.

The algorithm has done a good job at classifying *setosa* and *virginica* but struggles with *versicolor*.

Chapter 13

Supervised learning

Consider a collection of fresh basalt samples originating from different tectonic settings (e.g., mid ocean ridges, ocean islands and island arcs). Suppose that we have analysed the chemical composition of these samples (i.e., the concentration of SiO_2, Al_2O_3, etc). Further suppose that we have also analysed a basaltic rock from an ophiolite of unknown origin. Can we recover the original tectonic setting of the ophiolite?

This is one example of a supervised learning problem. Whereas the unsupervised learning algorithms of chapter 12 do not require prior knowledge about the data, the supervised learning algorithms of this chapter use **training data** to classify samples into pre-defined categories. Once the classification is complete, the same decision rules can then be used to assign a new sample of unknown affinity to one of these categories.

This chapter will introduce two supervised learning techniques. Discriminant analysis (Section 13.1) is a method that is similar in some ways to PCA (Section 12.1), whereas decision trees (Section 13.2) are similar to some ways to the hierarchical clustering algorithm of Section 13.2.

13.1 Discriminant Analysis

Consider a dataset X containing a large number of N-dimensional data, which belong to one of K classes. We are trying to decide which of these classes an unknown sample x belongs to. This question is answered by Bayes' Rule (Section 4.3): the decision d is the class G ($1 \leq G \leq K$) that has the highest **posterior probability** given the data x:

$$d = \max_{k=1,...,K} P(G = k|X = x) \tag{13.1}$$

This posterior probability can be calculated using Bayes' Theorem (Equation 4.10):

$$P(G|X) \propto P(X|G)P(G) \tag{13.2}$$

where $P(X|G)$ is the **likelihood** of the data in a given class, and $P(G)$ the **prior probability** of the class, which we will assume to be uniform; i.e., $P(G = 1) = P(G = 2) = \ldots = P(G = K) = 1/K$. Therefore, plugging Equation 13.2 into Equation 13.1 reduces Bayes' Rule to a comparison of likelihoods. We now make the simplifying assumption of multivariate normality:

$$P(X = x|G = k) = \frac{\exp\left(-\frac{1}{2}(x - \mu_k)^T \Sigma_k^{-1}(x - \mu_k)\right)}{\sqrt{(2\pi)^N |\Sigma_k|}} \tag{13.3}$$

Where μ_k and Σ_k are the mean and covariance of the kth class and $(x - \mu_k)^T$ indicates the transpose of the matrix $(x - \mu_k)$. Using Equation 13.3 and taking logarithms, Equation 13.1 becomes:

$$d = \max_{k=1,\dots,K} \left[-\frac{1}{2} \ln |\Sigma_k| - \frac{1}{2}(x - \mu_k)^T \Sigma_k^{-1}(x - \mu_k) \right] \tag{13.4}$$

Equation 13.4 forms the basis for **quadratic discriminant analysis** (QDA). Let us illustrate this procedure with a simple bivariate dataset comprising three classes:

Figure 13.1: Quadratic discriminant analysis of synthetic data: a) the bivariate training data comprise three classes; b) fitting three bivariate normal distributions to the data; c) decision boundaries between the three distributions.

If we have a new sample of unknown affinity, then we can simply plot its $x - y$ composition on Figure 13.1.c) and classify it in one of the three groups depending on the decision boundaries.

Usually, μ_k and Σ_k are not known, and must be estimated from the training data. If we make the additional assumption that all the classes share the same covariance structure (i.e., $\Sigma_k = \Sigma$ for all k), then Equation 13.1 simplifies to:

$$d = \max_{k=1,\dots,K} \left[x^T \Sigma^{-1} \mu_k - \frac{1}{2} \mu_k^T \Sigma^{-1} \mu_k \right] \tag{13.5}$$

This is the basis of **linear discriminant analysis** (LDA), which has some desirable properties. Because Equation 13.5 is linear in x, the decision boundaries between the different classes are straight lines. Figure 13.2 illustrates this with a second bivariate dataset:
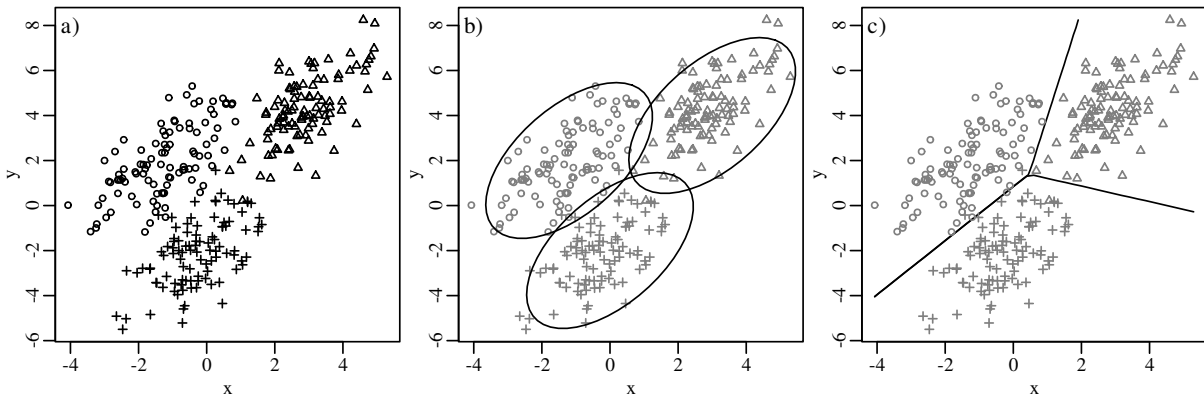
Figure 13.2: Linear discriminant analysis of a second synthetic dataset: a) the bivariate training data comprise three classes; b) fitting three bivariate normal distributions to the data with the same covariance matrix; c) decision boundaries between the three distributions.

LDA can also be used to reduce the dimensionality of a dataset, in a similar way to PCA. Recall that, in Section 12.1, we used a simple toy example to show how PCA can be used to project a two-dimensional dataset onto a one dimensional line. We can use the same approach to illustrate how LDA can achieve the same effect with a different aim. Consider a mixed dataset of two bivariate normal distributions:
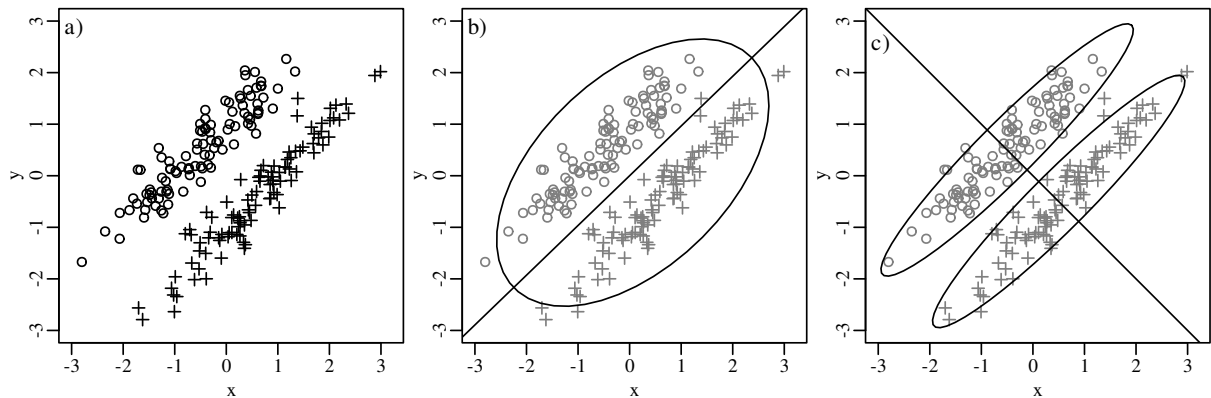
Figure 13.3: a) an equal mixture of two bivariate normal datasets; b) PCA extracts the major axis of the best fitting error ellipse to the merged dataset as the first principal component; c) LDA fits two error ellipses to the data and extracts a function (the first linear discriminant) that maximises the distance between them. In this example, this produces a line that is perpendicular to the first principal component.

Applying LDA to the four-dimensional iris dataset produces four linear discriminant functions that that maximise the *between class* variance S_b relative to the *within class* variance S_w, where S_b is the variance of the class means of Z, and S_w is the pooled variance about the means. Like the first two principal components of Figure 12.5 and the first two MDS dimensions of Figure 12.7, also the first two linear discriminant function of Figure 13.4 achieve a dimension reduction. But whereas PCA and MDS aim to visualise the total variability of the dataset, LDA aims to highlight the pre-defined clusters within the dataset:
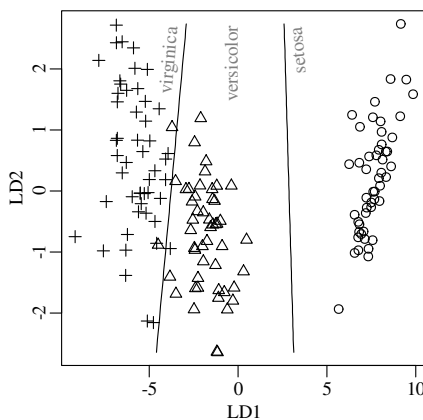
Figure 13.4: The first two linear discriminants of the four-dimensional iris data represent a two-dimensional projection of these data that maximises the differences between the three different species of flowers contained in them. They are defined as
LD1 = 0.83 × (sepal length - 5.84) + 1.53 × (sepal width - 3.06) - 2.20 × (petal length - 3.76) - 2.81 × (petal width - 1.20); and
LD2 = 0.024 × (sepal length - 5.85) + 2.16 × (sepal width - 3.06) - 0.93 × (petal length - 3.76) + 2.84 × (petal width - 1.20).

Suppose that we have a new flower with a sepal length of 6.0 cm, a sepal width of 3.0 cm, a petal length of 5.0 cm and a petal width of 1.5 cm. What species does the flower belong to?
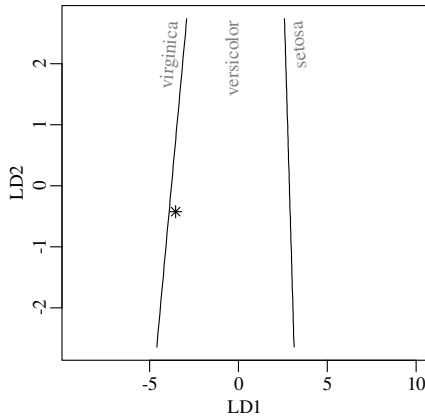
Figure 13.5:   Using the two discriminant functions of Figure 13.4:
LD1 $= 0.83 \times (6.0 - 5.84) + 1.53 \times (3.0 - 3.06) - 2.20 \times (5.0 - 3.76) - 2.81 \times (1.5 - 1.20) = -3.53$; and
LD2 $= 0.024 \times (6.0 - 5.85) + 2.16 \times (3.0 - 3.06) - 0.93 \times (5.0 - 3.76) + 2.84 \times (1.5 - 1.20) = -0.42$.
Plotting these two coordinates on the discrimination diagram of Figure 13.4 suggests that the new flower belongs to the *versicolor* species.

A more precise classification can be obtained by plugging the measurements of the new flower into Equation 13.2 and calculating the posterior probabilities for the three species. This produces the following result:

	virginica	*versicolor*	*setosa*
$P(G|X)$	0.19	0.81	3.2×10^{-27}

In conclusion, there is an 81% chance that the new flower is *versicolor* and a 19% chance that it is *virginica*.

13.2   Decision trees

Discriminant analysis is a *parametric* learning algorithm, which assumes that the different classes in a dataset are grouped in multivariate normal clusters (Figures 13.1.b) and 13.2.b)). Here is an example of a dataset for which this assumption is invalid:

Figure 13.6: Synthetic dataset of bivariate data that belong to two classes. The black circles are split into two data clouds. The white circles form a 'c'-shape surrounding one of the modes of the black population. Discriminant analysis is unable to deal with this situation.

Decision trees are a *nonparametric* learning algorithm that is better able to handle complex multimodal datasets like this. It uses **recursive binary partitions** to describe the data, using a recursive algorithm that approximates the data by a piecewise constant function. The first step of this algorithm exhaustively searches all the possible split points s $(-\infty < s < \infty)$ and variables (x and y in our example) to minimise the **impurity** Q:

$$Q = p_\circ(1 - p_\circ) + p_\bullet(1 - p_\bullet) \tag{13.6}$$

where $p_\circ$ and $p_\bullet$ are the proportions of class 1 and class 2 objects in one half of the partition. Equation 13.6 is also known as the **Gini index** of diversity. Figure 13.7 evaluates a few possible split points using this criterion. The optimal solution is found by exhaustive searching:

Figure 13.7: Evaluation of three candidate split points using the Gini index Q. The best first order split corresponds to $x = -4.902$ (panel c).

The left hand side of the first partition ($x < -4.902$, Figure 13.7.c) is pure ($100\% \times \bullet$). So the second step only needs to evaluate the right hand side. One major advantage of using *recursive* partitions is that they can be visualised as dendrograms, just like the hierarchical clusters of Section 12.4:

Figure 13.8: Second order partition of the right hand side of Figure 13.7.c). The results can be visualised as a dendrogram or tree (right). The 'leaves' of this tree are annotated as $n_\circ/n_\bullet$ where $n_\circ$ is the number of training data of class $\circ$ and $n_\bullet$ is the number of training data of class $\bullet$.

The recursive partitioning process can be repeated until all the nodes of the decision tree are 'pure', i.e. they contain only $\circ$ or only $\bullet$:
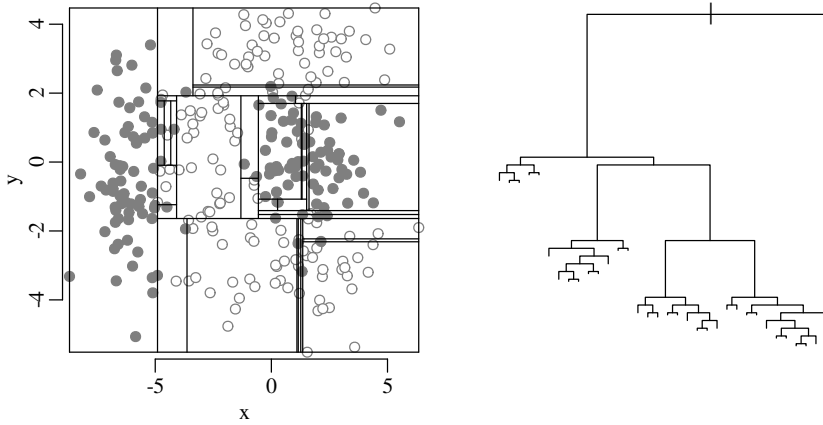
Figure 13.9: A recursive binary partition tree that perfectly classifies all the samples in Figure 13.6. The annotations of the dendrogram have been removed to reduce clutter.

The maximum sized tree thus obtained contains 35 terminal nodes and perfectly describes the training data. In other words, it has zero **bias**. However, for the purpose of prediction, this tree is not optimal, because it overfits the training data, causing high **variance**. One way to estimate the misclassification rate is by using a separate set of test data whose affinities (∘ or ●) are known, but which were not used to train the decision tree. Another method is **cross validation**. This method works as follows:

1. divide the training data into 10 equal parts;

2. remove one of the parts, and use the remaining nine to create a decision tree;

3. enter the fraction removed into the tree and count the number of misclassified samples in it;

4. repeat steps 2 and 3, but this time removing the second fraction;

5. repeat until all 10 parts have been assessed.

The tree with optimal **predictive power** is smaller than the largest possible tree, and can be found by 'pruning' the tree. Define the "cost-complexity criterion" of a tree T as

$$cp_\alpha(T) = \sum_{m=1}^{|T|} N_m Q_m + \alpha |T| \qquad (13.7)$$

with $|T|$ the number of terminal nodes in the tree T, N_m the number of observations in the mth terminal node; Q_m the impurity of the mth node, defined by Equation 13.6; and α a tuning parameter. For a given $\alpha \geq 0$, it is possible to find the subtree $T_\alpha \subset T_0$ that minimizes $cp_\alpha(T)$ over all possible subtrees of the largest possible tree T_0

$$T_\alpha = \min_{T \subset T_\circ} cp_\alpha(T) \qquad (13.8)$$

Repeating this procedure for a range of values $0 \leq \alpha < \infty$ produces a finite nested sequence of trees $\{T_0, T_{\alpha_1}, ..., T_{\alpha_{max}}\}$. Except for T_0, these trees will no longer have only pure end-nodes. Impure end-nodes are assigned the class that dominates in them. We then choose the value α^* that minimises the cross validation error. For our bivariate example dataset:

Figure 13.10: A plot of cross validated (CV) prediction error versus the number of nodes in the collection of nested subtrees shows a minimum at five splits. The CV error of small trees is caused by bias, while the CV error of large tree is a result of variance. There typically exist several trees with CV errors close to the minimum. Therefore, a '1-SE rule' is used, i.e., choosing the smallest tree whose misclassification rate does not exceed the minimum CV error plus one standard error of the smallest CV error (dotted line). For the example dataset, this supports an optimal tree with four splits.

For our bivariate example, this procedure produces a tree with four splits and five terminal nodes:

Figure 13.11: The optimal tree for the bivariate test data. This tree misclassifies 19 of the 300 samples in the training data (6.3%). The 10-fold cross validation error is 18%.

Like the discriminant analysis of Section 13.1, also decision trees can be applied to, and are most useful for, datasets that comprise more than two dimensions. Applying the method to Fisher's iris data:
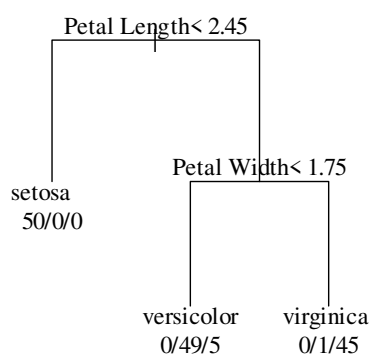
Figure 13.12: The optimal tree for Fisher's iris data. There are four variables (instead of two for the previous example) and three classes (instead of two for the previous example). The optimal tree misclassifies 6 of the 150 flowers in the training data (4%). The 10-fold cross validation error is 6%.

Suppose that we have a new flower with a sepal length of 6.0 cm, a sepal width of 3.0 cm, a petal length of 5.0 cm and a petal width of 1.5 cm. Which species is the flower? The petal length of the new flower is greater than the 2.45 cm cutoff of the first split and its petal width is less than the 1.75 cm cutoff of the second split. Therefore the flower ends up in second terminal node of the tree, suggesting that it belongs to species *versicolor*. This is the same conclusion as the LDA classification shown in Figure 13.5.

Chapter 14

Compositional data

The normal distribution (chapter 7) plays a key role in linear regression (chapter 10), PCA (Section 12.1), discriminant analysis (Section 13.1) and many other standard statistical techniques. Although Gaussian distributions are common in nature, it is dangerous to assume normality for all datasets. In fact, more often than not, the normality assumption is invalid for geological data. Ignoring this non-normality can lead to counter-intuitive and plainly wrong results.

14.1 Ratio data

To illustrate the dangers of blindly assuming normality, let us consider the simple case of **ratio data**, which are quite common in the Earth Sciences. Take, for example, the ratio of apatite to tourmaline in heavy mineral analysis, which has been used to indicate the duration of transport and storage prior to deposition. Or consider the ratio of ^{87}Sr to ^{87}Rb in geochronology (chapter 10). We have already seen that ratios can lead to spurious correlations in regression analysis (section 10.4). This section will show that even basic summary statistics such as the mean and standard deviation can produce counter-intuitive results when applied to ratios. Consider the following two datasets of ten random numbers between 0 and 1:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A	0.27	0.37	0.57	0.91	0.20	0.90	0.94	0.66	0.63	0.062
B	0.21	0.18	0.69	0.38	0.77	0.50	0.72	0.99	0.38	0.780

Forming two sets of ratios by dividing A by B and B by A:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A/B	1.30	2.10	0.83	2.40	0.26	1.80	1.30	0.67	1.70	0.079
B/A	0.78	0.47	1.20	0.42	3.80	0.55	0.76	1.50	0.60	13.0

Simple arithmetic dictates that the reciprocal of A/B equals B/A:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
A/B	1.30	2.10	0.83	2.40	0.26	1.80	1.30	0.67	1.70	0.079
B/A	0.78	0.47	1.20	0.42	3.80	0.55	0.76	1.50	0.60	13.0
$1/(A/B)$	0.78	0.47	1.20	0.42	3.80	0.55	0.76	1.50	0.60	13.0

However when we calculate the mean of the ratios:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	mean
A/B	1.30	2.10	0.83	2.40	0.26	1.80	1.30	0.67	1.70	0.079	1.20
B/A	0.78	0.47	1.20	0.42	3.80	0.55	0.76	1.50	0.60	13.0	2.30

then we find that the mean of A/B does *not* equal the reciprocal of the means of B/A!

$$\frac{1}{\overline{A/B}} = \frac{1}{1.20} = 0.81 \neq 2.30 = \overline{B/A}$$

$$\text{and } \frac{1}{\overline{B/A}} = \frac{1}{2.30} = 0.44 \neq 1.20 = \overline{A/B}$$

The solution to the ratio averaging conundrum is to take logarithms:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
$\ln[A/B]$	0.25	0.75	-0.18	0.86	-1.30	0.59	0.27	-0.41	0.50	-2.50
$\ln[B/A]$	-0.25	-0.75	0.18	-0.86	1.30	-0.59	-0.27	0.41	-0.50	2.50

Taking the average of the logarithms and exponentiating produces a **geometric mean**:

	mean	exp[mean]
$\ln[A/B]$	-0.12	0.88
$\ln[B/A]$	0.12	1.13

We then find that:

$$\frac{1}{g(A/B)} = \frac{1}{0.88} = 1.13 = g(B/A)$$

$$\text{and } \frac{1}{g(B/A)} = \frac{1}{1.13} = 0.88 = g(A/B)$$

where $g(*)$ stands for the "geometric mean of $*$". This is an altogether more satisfying result than the arithmetic mean.

14.2   Logratio transformations

Like the ratios of the previous section, the chemical compositions of rocks and minerals are also expressed as strictly positive numbers. They, however, do not span the entire range of positive values, but are restricted to a narrow subset of that space, ranging from 0 to 1 (if fractions are used) or from 0 to 100 (using percentage notation). Compositions are further restricted by a constant sum constraint:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} C_i = 1$$

for an n-component system. Consider, for example, a three-component system $\{x, y, z\}$, where $x + y + z = 1$. Such compositions can be plotted on ternary diagrams, which are very popular in geology. Well known examples are the Q–F–L diagram of sedimentary petrography, the A–CN–K diagram in weathering studies, and the A–F–M, Q–A–P and Q–P–F diagrams of igneous petrology. Treating the ternary data space as a regular Euclidean space with Gaussian statistics leads to wrong results, as illustrated by the following example:

Figure 14.1: The A–CN–K diagram is a widely used graphical device in chemical weathering studies. It is a ternary diagram of Al_2O_3, $CaO + Na_2O$ and K_2O, where the CaO refers to the silicate component of the sediment only (ignoring carbonates). The composition on the diagram results from the competing effects of initial starting composition and chemical weathering. With increasing weathering intensity, A–CN–K compositions get pulled towards the Al_2O_3 apex of the ternary diagram. This figure shows a synthetic dataset of 20 A–CN–K measurements that have been affected by variable weathering intensities.

To obtain an average composition for the 20 samples, we calculate the arithmetic mean of their A–CN–K values:

$$\overline{Al_2O_3} = \sum_{i=1}^{20}(Al_2O_3)_i/20 = 0.763$$

$$\overline{CaO + Na_2O} = \sum_{i=1}^{20}(CaO_2 + Na_2O)_i/20 = 0.141$$

$$\overline{K_2O} = \sum_{i=1}^{20}(K_2O)_i/20 = 0.096$$

Plotting this result on the ternary diagram reveals that it is physically meaningless:

Figure 14.2: The black square represents the average A–CN–K composition of the 20 samples of Figure 14.1. It is obtained by taking the arithmetic mean of all the Al_2O_3, $(CaO + Na_2O)$ and K_2O concentrations using Equation 3.1, and plotting the resulting 3-element vector as a new sample. This average composition plots outside the sample cloud, which is a meaningless result not unlike the porosity example of Figure 3.3.a.

To quantify the dispersion of the data, we calculate the standard deviation of the A–CN–K values:

$$s[Al_2O_3] = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{20}\frac{((Al_2O_3)_i - 0.763)^2}{19}} = 0.0975$$

$$s[CaO + Na_2O] = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{20}\frac{((CaO_2 + Na_2O)_i - 0.141)^2}{19}} = 0.142$$

$$s[K_2O] = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^{20}\frac{((K_2O)_i - 0.096)^2}{19}} = 0.0926$$

then we would expect ∼95% of the data to fall into a '2-sigma' interval around the mean (Section 7.3):

$$Al_2O_3 : 0.763 \pm 0.195$$
$$CaO + Na_2O : 0.141 \pm 0.284$$
$$K_2O : 0.096 \pm 0.185$$

Note how the lower limits of the confidence regions for ($CaO + Na_2O$) and K_2O have physically impossible negative values. Visualising these limits as a 2-sigma 'confidence polygon':

Figure 14.3: The black polygon represents a '95% confidence region' for the arithmetic mean of Figure 14.2. It is obtained by 1) calculating the standard deviations of the Al_2O_3, ($CaO + Na_2O$) and K_2O concentrations using Equation 3.3; 2) multiplying these values by two; and 3) subtracting or adding these values to the arithmetic mean of Figure 14.2. The resulting '2-sigma' confidence polygon plots outside the ternary diagram, in physically impossible negative data space.

The synthetic example shows that even the simplest summary statistics do not work as expected when applied to compositional data. The same is true for more advanced statistical operations that are based on the normal distribution. This includes linear regression (Section 10.3), principal component analysis (Section 12.1) and discriminant analysis (Section 13.1). These problems had long been known to geologists, but a comprehensive solution was not found until the 1980s, by Scottish statistician John Aitchison.

The solution to the compositional data conundrum is closely related to the solution of the ratio averaging problem discussed in Section 14.1. The trick is to map the n-dimensional composition to an $(n-1)$-dimensional Euclidean space by means of an additive logratio (alr) transformation. For example, in the ternary case, we can map the compositional variables x, y and z to two transformed variables v and w:

$$v = \ln\left[\frac{x}{z}\right], \ w = \ln\left[\frac{y}{z}\right] \tag{14.1}$$

After performing the statistical analysis of interest (e.g., calculating the mean or constructing a 95% confidence region) on the transformed data, the results can then be mapped back to compositional space with the inverse logratio transformation. For the ternary case:

$$x = \frac{\exp[v]}{\exp[v] + \exp[w] + 1}, \ y = \frac{\exp[w]}{\exp[v] + \exp[w] + 1}, \ z = \frac{1}{\exp[v] + \exp[w] + 1} \tag{14.2}$$

Applying this method to the A–CN–K dataset:
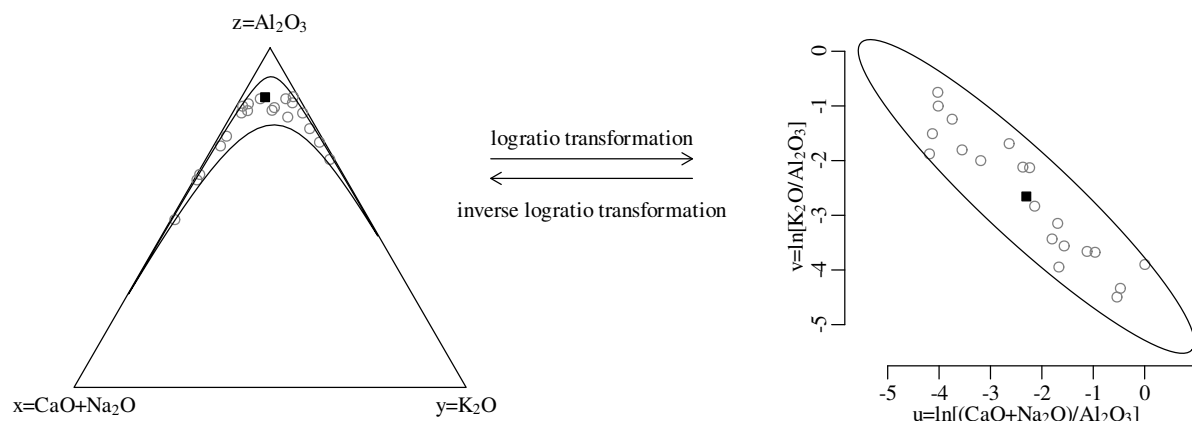
Figure 14.4: The additive logratio transformation (Equation 14.1) maps data from an n-dimensional compositional space to an $(n-1)$-dimensional Euclidean space. For the A–CN–K data, it maps the data from a ternary diagram ($n = 3$) to a bivariate ($n - 1 = 2$) dataspace using Equation 14.1. In this transformed space, it is safe to calculate the arithmetic mean (black square) and confidence regions (black ellipse). After completion of these calculations, the result can be mapped back to the ternary diagram using the inverse logratio transformation (Equation 14.2).

For the A–CN–K example, the transformed logratio mean plots inside the heart of the data cloud. The 2-sigma confidence ellipse of the logratios maps to a curved confidence region that entirely stays within the ternary diagram and closely hugs the data. These results are a lot more meaningful than the arithmetic mean and 2-sigma confidence polygons of Figures 14.2 and 14.3.

The logratio transformation makes intuitive sense. The very fact that it is possible to plot a ternary diagram on a two-dimensional sheet of paper already tells us that it really displays only two and not three dimensions worth of information. The bivariate logratio variables more faithfully represent the true information content of the compositional data. The logratio transformation can easily be generalised from three to more variables. For example, four-component compositional datasets are constrained within a three dimensional triangle or tetrahaedron. The general mathematical term for a constrained dataspace like a ternary diagram or tetrahaedron is the **simplex**. The additive logratio transformation maps data from the simplex to an ordinary Euclidean data space.

14.3 PCA of compositional data

Table 14.1 shows the concentration of 10 major oxides in 16 samples of dune sand from the Namib sand sea:

	SiO_2	Al_2O_3	Fe_2O_3	MgO	CaO	Na_2O	K_2O	TiO_2	P_2O_5	MnO
N1	82.54	6.14	3.18	1.65	2.24	1.16	1.35	0.44	0.11	0.06
N2	83.60	6.42	2.55	1.25	1.83	1.21	1.48	0.36	0.08	0.04
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮
N13	79.96	6.41	3.19	1.31	2.10	1.09	1.62	0.51	0.06	0.05
N14	73.62	9.96	4.07	2.01	3.45	1.86	2.29	0.44	0.10	0.07
T8	85.70	5.89	1.82	0.81	1.44	1.12	1.67	0.23	0.07	0.03
T13	82.54	6.02	2.30	1.42	3.07	1.19	1.46	0.34	0.11	0.04

Table 14.1: The major element composition (in weight percent) of 16 samples of Namib dune sand.

It is not possible to plot this multivariate dataset on a single two-dimensional diagram. Section 12.1 introduced principal component analysis as an effective way to address this issue by projecting the data onto a two-dimensional subspace. Unfortunately we cannot directly apply PCA to compositional data. For example, the first step in the PCA analysis is the calculation of an arithmetic mean (Equation 12.2). However, Section 14.2 showed that the arithmetic mean of compositional data can produce nonsensical results. This Section will show that this problem can be solved using logratio transformations.

Before we apply PCA to the data of Table 14.1, let us first illustrate the logratio solution using a simple toy example, which is similar to the toy example that was used in Section 12.1. Consider the following trivariate (a, b and c) dataset of three (1, 2 and 3) compositions that are constrained to a constant sum ($a_i + b_i + c_i = 1$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$):

$$X = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array} \begin{array}{ccc} a & b & c \\ \left[\begin{array}{ccc} 0.03 & 99.88 & 0.09 \\ 70.54 & 25.95 & 3.51 \\ 72.14 & 26.54 & 1.32 \end{array}\right] \end{array} \tag{14.3}$$

Plot the data on a ternary diagram:
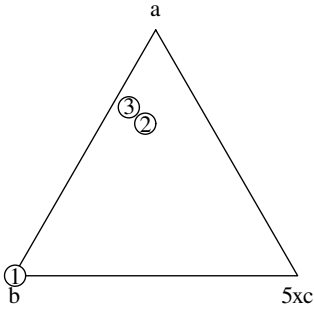
Figure 14.5: Ternary diagram of the synthetic toy example of Equation 14.3. Component c has been multiplied by a factor of 5 to avoid an unsightly overlap between the plot symbols of samples 2 and 3, whose compositions are very similar.

Subjecting the data to a logratio transformation maps the 3×3 table of compositions onto a 3×2 table of logratios:

$$X_a = \begin{array}{c} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array} \begin{array}{cc} \ln(a/c) & \ln(b/c) \\ \left[\begin{array}{cc} -1 & 7 \\ 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{array}\right] \end{array} \tag{14.4}$$

The observant reader may note that the numbers in this table are identical to the toy example shown in Equation 12.1. This, of course, is intentional. The implication is that, once the data have undergone a logratio transformation, PCA proceeds in exactly the same way as previously demonstrated in Section 12.1.

Applying conventional PCA to the log-transformed data of Equation 14.4 yields two principal components that are expressed in terms of the logratios $\ln(a/c)$ and $\ln(b/c)$:

Figure 14.6: PCA biplot of the ternary toy data of Figure 14.5 after alr-transformation. Note that this result is nearly identical to the toy example of Figure 12.4. The only difference is the labels of the vector loadings, which are logratios instead of the names of the original variables.

The alr-transformation solves the closure problem. But it is not entirely satisfactory because the resulting biplots are not as easy to interpret as the biplots of Section 12.1. Whereas the original variables in a compositional dataset are expressed in units of weight percent or ppm, which make intuitive sense to geochemists, the same cannot be said about the logratios. This issue can be solved by using a different type of logratio transformation, the **centred logratio transformation** (clr):

$$u_i = \ln\left[\frac{x_i}{g_i}\right], \ v_i = \ln\left[\frac{y_i}{g_i}\right], \ \text{and} \ w_i = \ln\left[\frac{z_i}{g_i}\right] \tag{14.5}$$

where g_i is the geometric mean of the ith sample:

$$g_i = \exp\left[\frac{\ln[x_i] + \ln[y_i] + \ln[z_i]}{3}\right]$$

Applying this transformation to the data of Equation 14.3 yields a new trivariate dataset:

$$X_{\mathrm{c}} = \begin{matrix} & \ln(a/g) & \ln(b/g) & \ln(c/g) \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{matrix} \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 5 & -2 \\ 1.33 & 0.33 & -1.67 \\ 1.67 & 0.67 & -2.33 \end{bmatrix} \tag{14.6}$$

where g stands for the geometric mean of each row. Subjecting Equation 14.6 to the same matrix decomposition as Equation 12.2 yields:

$$X_c = 1_{3,1} \ C + S \ V \ D = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix} +$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1.15 & 0 & 0.82 \\ 0.58 & -1 & 0.82 \\ 0.58 & 1 & 0.82 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3.67 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.41 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0.71 & -0.71 & 0 \\ 0.41 & 0.41 & -0.82 \\ 0.58 & 0.58 & 0.58 \end{bmatrix} \tag{14.7}$$

Note that, even though this yields three principal components instead two, the standard deviation of the third component in matrix V is zero. Therefore, all the information is contained in the first two components:
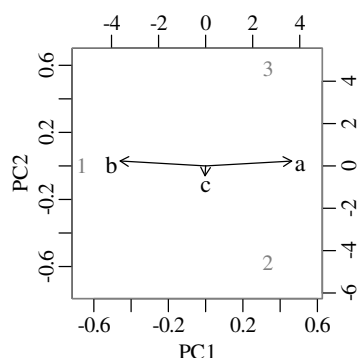
Figure 14.7: Compositional biplot of the toy data using the clr transformation. The principal components are identical to Figure 14.6, but the vector loadings are labelled with the raw variable names, rather than the additive logratios. The biplot tells use that sample 1 is rich in component a, whereas samples 2 and 3 are rich in component b. The difference between samples 2 and 3 is due to a small difference in component c. Compare with the ternary diagram (Figure 14.5) to verify these conclusions.

The PCA biplot using the clr transformation looks identical to that using the alr transformation. The only difference is that the loadings are expressed in terms of the three clr variables, rather than the two alr variables. The former are easier to interpret than the latter, which is why the clr transformation is preferred in this context. Applying the same concept to the Namib dataset of Table 14.1:

Figure 14.8: Compositional biplot of the major element concentration data of Table 14.1, with the samples shown in grey and the vector loadings in black. Samples that plot close together (such as N1 and N14) have similar compositions. The arrows indicate that sample N8 is enriched in MnO relative to sample T8. The arrows for MgO and CaO plot in the same direction, suggesting that these two oxides are correlated. The arrow for K_2O points in the opposite direction, suggesting that this oxide is anticorrelated with MgO and CaO. The **link** between K_2O and MgO is perpendicular to the link between TiO_2 and P_2O_5, suggesting that the variability of these two **subcompositions** is statistically independent.

Although the alr and clr transformations act in slightly different ways, they both achieve the same effect, namely to 'liberate' the compositional data from the confines of the simplex and map it to a Euclidean space in which values are free to take any value from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$. Logratio transformations allow compositional data to be analysed by a host of standard statistical techniques, including not only PCA, but also clustering and discriminant analysis.

14.4   LDA of compositional data

Section 14.3 showed how we can safely use unsupervised learning techniques such as PCA to compositional data after performing a logratio transformation. Exactly the same procedure can be applied to supervised learning techniques such as LDA. We will illustrate this with an example from igneous petrology:
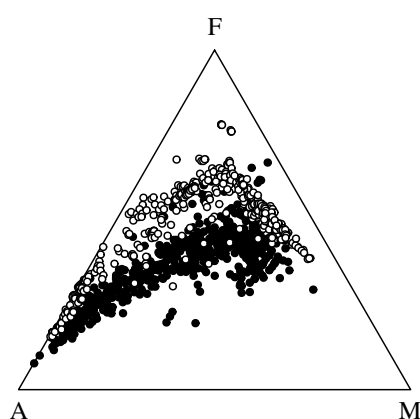
Figure 14.9: A dataset of igneous rock compositions from Iceland and the Cascades Mountains on a ternary A–F–M diagram (where A = Na_2O+K_2O, F = Fe_2O_3+FeO and M = MgO). The white dots define a 'Fenner' trend marking the tholeiitic suite of igneous rocks from Iceland. The black dots define a 'Bowen' trend, marking the calc-alkaline suite of rocks from the Cascades.

Plotting the same data in logratio space:
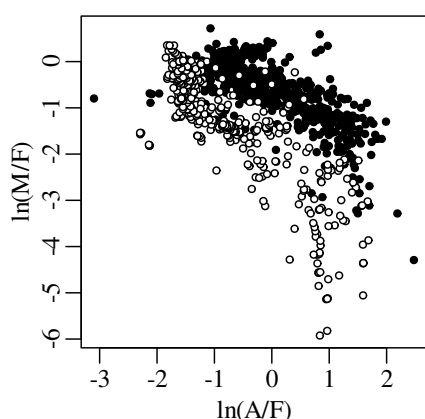
Figure 14.10: The additive logratio transformation liberates the A–F–M data from the confines of the ternary diagram and maps them to a Euclidean dataspace in which logratios are free to take any value from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$. In this space, the $\ln(M/F)$ vs. $\ln(A/F)$ values of the tholeiitic and calc-alkali rock suites are clustered into two distinct clouds of roughly equal size that have all the hallmarks of bivariate normal distributions with a shared covariance matrix. Thus the transformed data seems well suited for linear discriminant analysis.

Applying LDA to the A–F–M data and visualising the results in both logratio space and the ternary diagram:
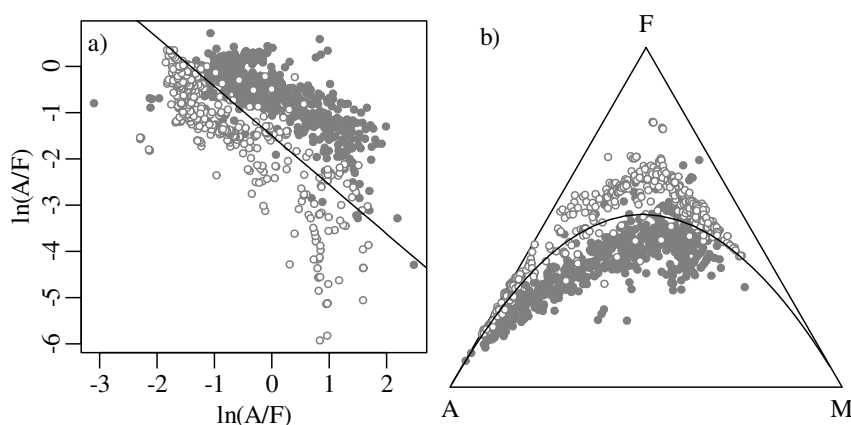
Figure 14.11: LDA of the A–F–M data shown in a) logratio space and b) a ternary diagram.

The linear boundary between the tholeiitic and calc-alkaline fields of the A–F–M logratio diagram is not only an effective discriminator between these two fields, but it also encodes some real geochemical information about the petrogenesis of igneous rocks. Section 14.5 will show how fundamental compositional processes can lead to simple laws in logratio space.

14.5   Logratio processes

Consider a magma containing A mass units of Na_2O+K_2O, F mass units of $FeO+Fe_2O_3$, and M mass units of MgO. Suppose that, as the magma cools, it loses components A, F and M at rates that are proportional to the amounts of A, F and M present in the magma:

$$\frac{\partial A}{\partial t} = -\lambda_A A, \ \frac{\partial F}{\partial t} = -\lambda_F F, \text{ and } \frac{\partial M}{\partial t} = -\lambda_M M \tag{14.8}$$

where t is time and λ_x is a decay constant (for $x \in \{A, F, M\}$). The same mathematical formulation can be used to describe the settlement of sediment from a suspension, or the decay of radioactive isotopes. The solution to Equation 14.8 is a set of exponential functions:

$$A = A_\circ \exp(-\lambda_A t), \ F = F_\circ \exp(-\lambda_F t), \text{ and } M = M_\circ \exp(-\lambda_M t) \tag{14.9}$$

where $A_\circ$, $F_\circ$ and $M_\circ$ are the initial values of A, F and M in the primitive magma. Different values of λ_A, λ_F and λ_M give rise to different trajectories on the AFM diagram. Combining the three compositional variables A, F and M into two logratio variables $\ln(A/F)$ and $\ln(M/F)$ recasts the exponential functions of Equation 14.9 into two linear functions:

$$\ln(A/F) = \ln(A_\circ/F_\circ) + (\lambda_F - \lambda_A)t \tag{14.10}$$

$$\ln(M/F) = \ln(M_\circ/F_\circ) + (\lambda_M - \lambda_A)t \tag{14.11}$$

which can be combined as follows:

$$\ln(A/F) = C_1 \ln(M/F) + C_2$$
$$\text{where } C_1 = \frac{\lambda_F - \lambda_A}{\lambda_F - \lambda_M} \tag{14.12}$$
$$\text{and } C_2 = \ln(A_\circ/F_\circ) - C_1 \ln(M_\circ/F_\circ)$$

Thus, the curved trajectories on the AFM diagram become straight lines in logratio space. This is exactly the behaviour that was observed in Figure 14.11. Evaluating the compositional evolution of three different A–F–M systems:

	starting position	$\ln[A_\circ/F_\circ]$	$\ln[M_\circ/F_\circ]$	λ_A	λ_F	λ_M
1	i	-2	1	4	6	8
2	i	-2	1	4	7	8
3	ii	1	2	4	4	8

produces the following output:
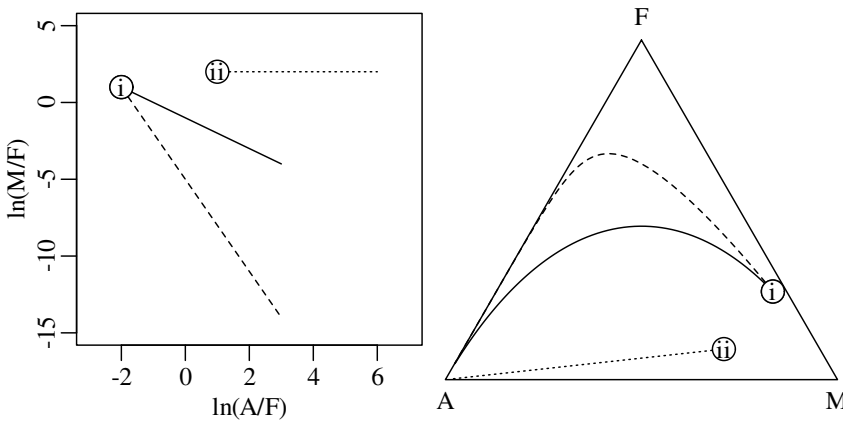
Figure 14.12: Exponential decay processes of compositional data become linear trends in logratio space. Initial composition i forms the starting point of two trajectories, marked by dashed and solid lines, respectively. These trends are characterised by different decay parameters.

The dashed and solid lines in Figure 14.12 mimic the Fenner and Bowen trends of the tholeiitic and calc-alkaline magma series, respectively. This makes geological sense because it is not hard to imagine how λ_F could depend on the oxygen fugacity in the magma, which controls the valence state of the Fe-ions and, hence, the minerals that it forms.

Chapter 15

Directional data

Strike and dip, azimuth and elevation, latitude and longitude, ... *directional data* are ubiquitous in the Earth Sciences. Just like the compositional data discussed in chapter 14, the statistical analysis of these directional data is fraught with dangers.

15.1 Circular data

Consider the following dataset of orientations (in degrees) of thirty glacial striations from Madagascar:

44	51	79	65	27	31	4	355	22	352	287	7	287	339	0
276	342	355	334	296	7	17	351	349	37	339	40	324	325	334

These values span a range from $0°$ and $360°$, where $0° = 360°$. Plotting the data on a circle:
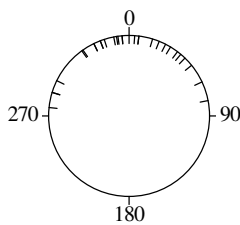
Figure 15.1: The orientations of 30 glacial striations. The values are roughly centered around zero but exhibit significant scatter, from the northwest $(276°)$ to the northeast $(79°)$.

Computing the arithmetic mean of these angles yields a value of $189.2°$. This is a nonsensical result:
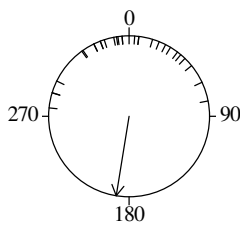
Figure 15.2: The same glacial striation data of Figure 15.1, with their arithmetic mean shown as an arrow. Even though the individual striations are all pointing north, their arithmetic mean is pointing in exactly the opposite direction.

The problem is that directional data are 'wrapped around' a circle. The difference between $1°$ and $359°$ is not $358°$ but $2°$. So the usual rules of arithmetic do not apply to angular measurements. Better results for the difference between two angles θ and ϕ are obtained using the following trigonometric relationship:

$$\theta - \phi = \arcsin\left(\sin[\theta]\cos[\phi] - \cos[\theta]\sin[\phi]\right) \tag{15.1}$$

145

Similarly, the mean of 1° and 359° should not be 180° but 0°. A more sensible definition of the 'mean direction' is again obtained using trigonometry, by taking the **vector sum** of all the component directions. For example, if $\theta = \{\theta_1, \dots, \theta_i, \dots \theta_n\}$ are n angles, then the resultant direction is obtained by summing the horizontal and vertical components of unit vectors pointing in these directions:

$$\bar{\theta} = \arctan\left(\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\sin[\theta_i]}{\sum_{i=1}^{n}\cos[\theta_i]}\right) \tag{15.2}$$

Applying this formula to the glacial striation data:
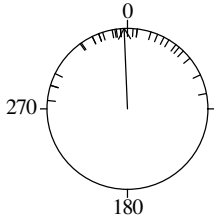
Figure 15.3: The vector sum of the 30 glacial striation measurements points in a direction of 357.6°, which is marked by the arrow and does a much better job at capturing the 'central' direction than the arithmetic mean of Figure 15.2 does.

Dividing the length of the vector sum by the number of measurements yields a new summary statistic, $\bar{R}$, which is shown as a thick black arrow in Figure 15.4.

$$\bar{R} = \sqrt{\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n}\sin[\theta_i]/n\right)^2 + \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n}\cos[\theta_i]/n\right)^2} \tag{15.3}$$
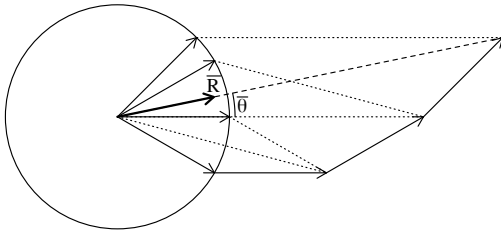
Figure 15.4: An average direction (dashed line) is obtained by taking the vector sum of four angular measurements (thin black arrows). Scaling by the number of measurements (thick black arrow) yields a measure of concentration ($0 \leq \bar{R} \leq 1$), which increases in length with decreasing angular dispersion and vice versa.

This arrow shortens with increasing scatter and so $\bar{R}$ is not dispersion parameter like the standard deviation, but a *concentration parameter*. To create a dispersion parameter, we can use $\bar{R}$ to define the **circular standard deviation**:

$$s_c = \sqrt{\ln(1/\bar{R}^2)} \tag{15.4}$$

In the extreme case where all the measurements point in the same direction, $\bar{R} = 1$ and $s_c = 0$. If the data are evenly distributed around the circle, then $\bar{R} = 0$ and $s_c = \infty$.
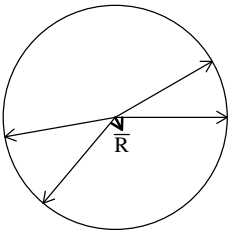
Figure 15.5: When the directional measurements are greatly dispersed, the normalised vector sum $\bar{R}$ is short ($\bar{R} = 0.125$ in this example), and the circular standard deviation large ($s_c = 4.16$).

15.2 Circular distributions

The normal distribution is inappropriate for directional data for the same reason why it was inappropriate for compositional data: its tails go from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$ and do not fit within the constrained dataspace of the angles. The **von Mises distribution** does not suffer from this problem:

$$f(\theta|\mu, \kappa) \propto \exp[\kappa \cos(\theta - \mu)] \tag{15.5}$$

where μ is the location parameter (the mean angle) and κ is the concentration parameter. As the name suggests, large κ-values correspond to narrow distributions, and small κ-values to wide ones.

Figure 15.6: Four examples of the von Mises distribution with different values for the mean μ and the concentration parameter κ, wrapped around a (grey) circle. The probability density is proportional to the distance from the circle to the black line.

The parameter κ is not easy to determine directly, but can be estimated indirectly via the concentration parameter $\bar{R}$ and the following approximation:

$$\hat{\kappa} = \frac{\bar{R}(p + 1 - \bar{R}^2)}{1 - \bar{R}^2} \tag{15.6}$$

where p marks the number of parameters, namely $p = 1$ for circular data and $p = 2$ for spherical data (Section 15.4).
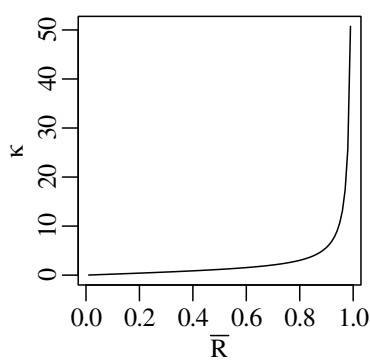
Figure 15.7: $\bar{R}$ and κ are two concentration parameters for circular data. $\bar{R}$ is easier to calculate than κ (using Equation 15.3), and can be converted to κ in order to fit a von Mises distribution to the data.

Applying this routine to the glacial striation measurements of Section 15.1 yields a value of $\bar{R}$ of 0.78, which corresponds to a κ-value of 2.8.

Figure 15.8: Density plot and rug plot for the glacial stria-
tion data. The bell shaped density curve represents a von
Mises distribution with concentration parameter $\kappa = 2.8$
and mean $\mu = 357.6°$. In contrast with Figure 15.6, in
which the von Mises distribution was wrapped around a
circle, here it is stretched out along a linear interval from
$-\pi$ to $+\pi$.

15.3 Spherical data

The principles of directional statistics can be generalised from the 1-dimensional circular line in
2-dimensional space to a 2-dimensional spherical surface in 3-dimensional space. The coordinates
of data in this space can be expressed as latitude (l) and longitude (L):

$$\begin{cases} x = \cos[l]\sin[L] \\ y = \sin[l] \\ z = -\cos[l]\cos[L] \end{cases} \tag{15.7}$$

as strike (S) and dip (D):

$$\begin{cases} x = -\cos[D]\sin[S] \\ y = \cos[D]\cos[S] \\ z = \sin[D] \end{cases} \tag{15.8}$$

or as azimuth (A) and dip (D):

$$\begin{cases} x = \cos[D]\cos[A] \\ y = \cos[D]\sin[A] \\ z = \sin[D] \end{cases} \tag{15.9}$$

where the x-axis points towards the north, the y-axis towards the east, and the z-axis points
downwards. Spherical data can be visualised on a 2-dimensional surface by stereographic map
projection, using either a Wulff equal angle or a Schmidt equal area **stereonet**:

Figure 15.9: a) Wulff equal angle and
b) Schmidt equal area stereonets, with
circles of 10° radius drawn at azimuths
of 0°, 90°, 180° and 270°, and dips of
10° and 90°. As the names suggest,
the Wulff equal angle net preserves the
shape of the circles, and the Schmidt
equal area net their size.

The Wulff net is used in structural geology and the Schmidt net in crystallography. Given the Cartesian coordinates $\{x, y, z\}$, the stereographic projection proceeds as follows:

$$\begin{cases} X = \tan(\phi)\sin(\theta) \\ Y = \tan(\phi)\cos(\theta) \end{cases} \tag{15.10}$$

for the Wulff net, and

$$\begin{cases} X = \sqrt{2}\sin(\phi)\sin(\theta) \\ Y = \sqrt{2}\sin(\phi)\cos(\theta) \end{cases} \tag{15.11}$$

for the Schmidt net, where

$$\begin{cases} \phi = \arccos\left(\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + (z-1)^2}/2\right) \\ \theta = \arctan\left(x/y\right) \end{cases} \tag{15.12}$$

Stereonets can be used to visualise

1. geographical data:
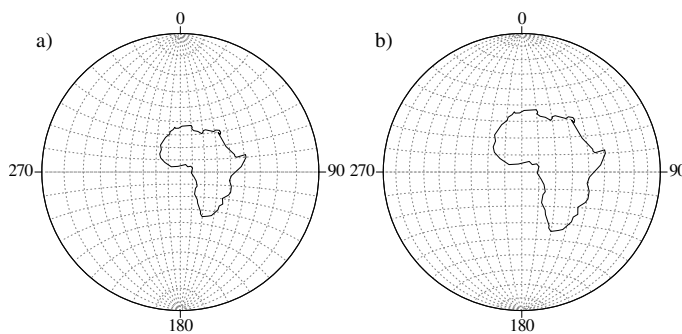
Figure 15.10:   a) Wulff and b) Schmidt projection of the African continent.   The Wulff net shows Africa in its right shape, and the Schmidt net shows it at the right size. No two dimensional projection can achieve both goals at once.

2. palaeomagnetic data, such as the following dataset of 10 palaeomagnetic declination (= azimuth) and inclination (= dip) measurements:

declination	47.9	46.3	44.7	50.9	56.4	42.6	44.9	41.5	47.9	39.6
inclination	28.6	20.1	15.6	18.1	17.5	28.7	12.2	24.5	20.6	15.0
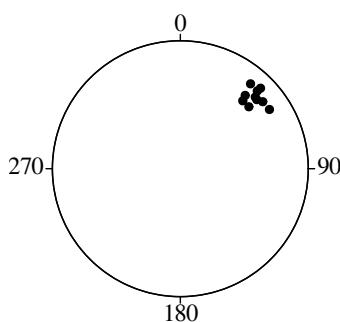
Figure 15.11: The palaeomagnetic declination (=azimuth) and inclination (=dip) of 10 samples shown in a Schmidt equal area diagram.

3. structural measurements, such as this set of 10 strikes and dips on a fault plane:

strike	226	220	223	222	233	227	234	229	227	224
dip	28.4	35.3	41.0	39.6	48.3	34.7	34.5	36.0	34.2	28.7
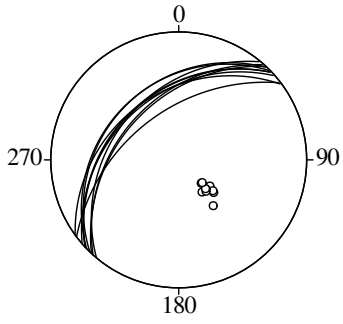
Figure 15.12: 10 fault plane measurements shown on a Wulff stereonet. The white cirles mark the 'pole' of the planar measurements, i.e. a perpendicular line to the plane. The circular segments mark the intersection of the planes with bottom half of a sphere, shown in an equal angle projection.

15.4   Spherical distributions

The statistical analysis of spherical data is similar to that of the circular data in Sections 15.1 and 15.2. The von Mises – Fisher (vMF) distribution generalises the von-Mises distribution of Equation 15.5. In three dimensions, the density function for the vMF distribution is given by:

$$f(\{x, y, z\}|\{\mu_x, \mu_y, \mu_y\}, \kappa) = \frac{\kappa \exp[\kappa(x\mu_x + y\mu_y + z\mu_z)]}{2\pi(\exp[\kappa] - \exp[-\kappa])} \tag{15.13}$$

where $\mu = \{\mu_x, \mu_y, \mu_z\}$ is a unit vector representing the mean of the distribution in Cartesian coordinates, and κ is the concentration parameter. μ and κ are unknown but can be estimated from the data using the vector sum. To average a collection of n spherical measurements:

$$\{\bar{x}, \bar{y}, \bar{z}\} = \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{x_i}{n\bar{R}}, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{y_i}{n\bar{R}}, \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{z_i}{n\bar{R}} \right\} \tag{15.14}$$

where $\{x_i, y_i, z_i\}$ are the Cartesian coordinates computed using Equation 15.7, 15.8 or 15.9, and $\bar{R}$ is the concentration parameter:

$$\bar{R} = \frac{1}{n} \sqrt{\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i \right)^2 + \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} y_i \right)^2 + \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} z_i \right)^2} \tag{15.15}$$

which is related to the (approximate) value for κ by Equation 15.6 (with $p = 2$).

Then the average latitude and longitude are given by:

$$\begin{cases} \bar{L} = \arctan{(-\bar{x}/\bar{z})} \\ \bar{l} = \arcsin{(\bar{y})} \end{cases} \tag{15.16}$$

the average strike and dip:

$$\begin{cases} \bar{S} = \arctan{(-\bar{x}/\bar{y})} \\ \bar{D} = \arcsin{(\bar{z})} \end{cases} \tag{15.17}$$

and the average azimuth and dip:

$$\begin{cases} \bar{D} = \arctan{(\bar{y}/\bar{x})} \\ \bar{A} = \arcsin{(\bar{z})} \end{cases} \tag{15.18}$$

Applying this procedure to the palaeomagnetic and structural datasets:

Figure 15.13: a) the palaeomagnetic data of Figure 15.11 shown in grey, with their vector mean marked as a black square. b) the fault data of Figure 15.12 in grey with the vector mean as a back square and great circle.

Chapter 16

Spatial data

"everything is related to everything else, but near things are more related than distant things."

– Waldo R. Tobler (1969)

Geostatistics is a branch of statistics that deals explicitly with data distributed in space and aims at explicitly modelling that spatial relationship between the data. Originally developed in the context of mining geology, the field has applications in petroleum geology, environmental science, oceanography, hydrology, pedology, ecology, epidemiology, and other fields. In this chapter we will use an environmental dataset to introduce some fundamental geostatistical concepts:

#	x	y	Zn	$z = \ln[\text{Zn}]$
1	181072	333611	1022	6.93
2	181025	333558	1141	7.04
3	181165	333537	640	6.46
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	
50	180199	331591	375	5.93
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	
155	180627	330190	375	5.93

Table 16.1: Locations and zinc concentrations of 155 samples of topsoil, collected in a flood plain of the river Meuse, near the village of Stein (Netherlands). x and y are the Easting and Northing (as metres), respectively, in Rijksdriehoek (RDH, Netherlands topographical) map coordinates. The column labelled 'Zn' contains the zinc concentration (in ppm) from composite samples of approximately 15×15m areas.

Now consider a position $\{x = 179850, y = 331650\}$ where no measurements was taken. The question that this chapter addresses is: can we use the surrounding data to estimate the Zn-concentration at this new location? Or, bearing in mind the idiosyncrasies of compositional data that were discussed in chapter 14: can we estimate the logarithm of the Zr-concentration (z in Table 16.1) at this new location?
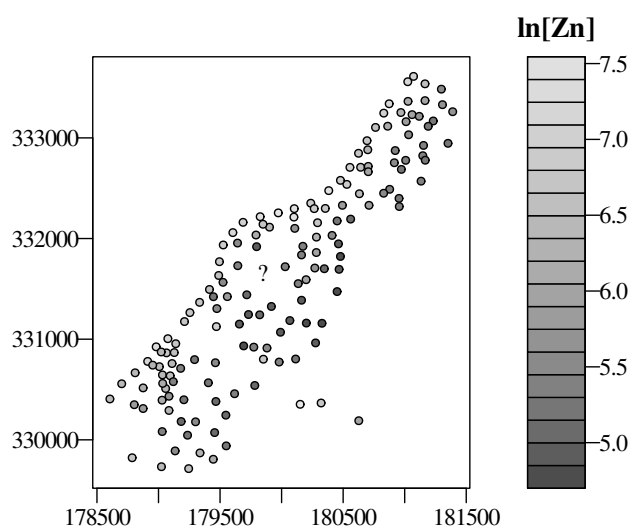
Figure 16.1: Location map of the Meuse data. The question mark is located at a position $\{x = 179850, y = 331650\}$ where no measurement was taken. This chapter will use a geostatistical technique called **kriging** to estimate the (logarithm of) the zinc concentration at this location from the surrounding measurements.

16.1   The semivariogram

To assess the spatial correlation of the data, we begin by measuring the inter-sample distances between the 155 samples in the Meuse dataset:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	...	155
1	0	71	120	260	370	470	260	250	380	470	...	3400
2		0	140	280	360	470	230	200	330	440	...	3400
3			0	140	250	360	170	220	320	380	...	3400
4				0	150	240	180	300	350	320	...	3400
5					0	110	150	280	270	180	...	3200
6						0	250	380	330	180	...	3200
7							0	140	170	210	...	3200
8								0	140	280	...	3200
9									0	180	...	3100
10										0	...	3000
⋮											⋱	⋮
155												0

where only the upper triangle is shown because the lower triangle contains exactly the same values. Next, we compute the differences between the (logged) Zn-concentrations of the samples, thus producing a second 155×155 matrix:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	...	155
1	0											
2	0.11	0										
3	0.47	0.58	0									
4	1.4	1.5	0.91	0								
5	1.3	1.4	0.87	0.046	0							
6	1.3	1.4	0.82	0.089	0.044	0						
7	1.1	1.2	0.62	0.30	0.25	0.21	0					
8	0.92	1.0	0.46	0.46	0.41	0.37	0.16	0				
9	1.1	1.2	0.61	0.30	0.25	0.21	0.0029	0.16	0			
10	1.7	1.8	1.3	0.34	0.39	0.43	0.64	0.80	0.64	0		
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋱	
155	1.0	1.1	0.53	0.38	0.33	0.29	0.080	0.079	0.078	0.72	...	0

where we show only the lower triangle because the upper triangle contains exactly the same values. We can then merge the two tables and select all the pairs of samples that are within a distance of 150 m from each other:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	...	155
1	0	71	120	260	370	470	260	250	380	470	...	3400
2	0.11	0	140	280	360	470	230	200	330	440	...	3400
3	0.47	0.58	0	140	250	360	170	220	320	380	...	3400
4	1.4	1.5	0.91	0	150	240	180	300	350	320	...	3400
5	1.3	1.4	0.87	0.046	0	110	150	280	270	180	...	3200
6	1.3	1.4	0.82	0.89	0.044	0	250	380	330	180	...	3200
7	1.1	1.2	0.62	0.30	0.25	0.21	0	140	170	210	...	3200
8	0.92	1.0	0.46	0.46	0.41	0.37	0.16	0	140	280	...	3200
9	1.1	1.2	0.61	0.30	0.25	0.21	0.0029	0.16	0	180	...	3100
10	1.7	1.8	1.3	0.34	0.39	0.43	0.64	0.80	0.64	0	...	3000
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋱	⋮
155	1.0	1.1	0.53	0.38	0.33	0.29	0.080	0.079	0.078	0.72	...	0

Table 16.2: Composite data table with the inter-sample distances shown above the diagonal and the log-contrasts of the corresponding zinc-concentrations shown below the diagonal. Boxed values mark sample pairs that are located within 150 metres of each other.

We can then use the boxed values below the diagonal to define the sample **semivariance** as:

$$\gamma[h] = \sum_k^{n(h)} \frac{(z_{i[k]} - z_{j[k]})^2}{2n(h)} \tag{16.1}$$

where $n(h)$ is the number of sample pairs that fall within a distance (or 'lag') h of each other, and $\{z_{i[k]}, z_{j[k]}\}$ are the ln(Zn) values for the kth sample pair. For the data shown in Table 16.2, there are 166 sample pairs that fall within a distance of 150 m of each other (of which only 9 are shown due to space constraints), and the sample semivariance equals:

$$\gamma[0 < h \le 150] = \frac{0.16^2 + 0.66^2 + 0.82^2 + \ldots}{2 \times 166} = 0.10$$

We can repeat this calculation for all sample pairs that are within a distance of 150 to 300 metres of each other:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	...	155
1	0	71	120	260	370	470	260	250	380	470	...	3400
2	0.11	0	140	280	360	470	230	200	330	440	...	3400
3	0.47	0.58	0	140	250	360	170	220	320	380	...	3400
4	1.4	1.5	0.91	0	150	240	180	300	350	320	...	3400
5	1.3	1.4	0.87	0.046	0	110	150	280	270	180	...	3200
6	1.3	1.4	0.82	0.089	0.044	0	250	380	330	180	...	3200
7	1.1	1.2	0.62	0.30	0.25	0.21	0	140	170	210	...	3200
8	0.92	1.0	0.46	0.46	0.41	0.37	0.16	0	140	280	...	3200
9	1.1	1.2	0.61	0.30	0.25	0.21	0.0029	0.16	0	180	...	3100
10	1.7	1.8	1.3	0.34	0.39	0.43	0.64	0.80	0.64	0	...	3000
⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋮	⋱	⋮
155	1.0	1.1	0.53	0.38	0.33	0.29	0.080	0.079	0.078	0.72	...	0

Table 16.3: The same composite matrix of Table 16.2, with boxed values marking inter-sample distances of 150 to 300 metres (above the diagonal) and their corresponding log-contrast (below the diagonal).

There are 530 sample pairs that fall within a 150–300 m distance of each other, resulting in a semivariance of:

$$\gamma[150 < h \leq 300] = \frac{2.0^2 + 1.5^2 + 1.3^2 + 2.1^2 + \cdots}{2 \times 530} = 0.28$$

which is greater than $\gamma[0 < h \leq 150]$. Continuing these calculations for progressively increasing values of h produces an empirical **semivariogram**:
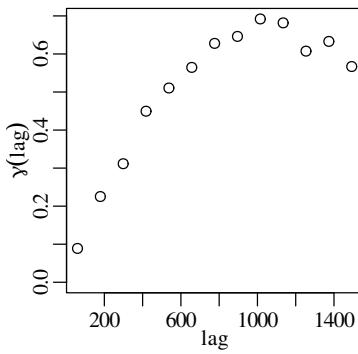
Figure 16.2: Empirical semivariogram of the Meuse data. The semivariance is low at first and then gradually rises with increasing lag before levelling off to a plateau. Because the semivariance is inversely proportional to the degree of spatial correlation, the semivariogram tells us that there is relatively little variability among samples that are located close together, and more variability among samples that are far apart. In other words, the semivariogram formalises Tobler's *First Law of Geography*, which was quoted at the beginning of this chapter.

16.2 Semivariogram models

Now that we have quantified the degree of spatial variability or, equivalently, the degree of spatial correlation, the next step in the kriging method is to parameterise the semivariogram. There are several equations to do this, such as the exponential model:

$$\gamma[h] = c_s + (c_n - c_s) \exp\left[-\frac{h}{c_r}\right] \tag{16.2}$$

the Gaussian model:

$$\gamma[h] = c_s + (c_n - c_s) \exp\left[-\frac{h^2}{c_r^2}\right] \tag{16.3}$$

the linear model:

$$\begin{cases} \gamma[h] = c_n + \dfrac{(c_s - c_n)h}{c_r} & \text{if } h \leq c_r \\ \gamma[h] = c_s & \text{if } h > c_r \end{cases} \tag{16.4}$$

and the spherical model:

$$\begin{cases} \gamma[h] = c_n + (c_s - c_n)\left(\dfrac{3}{2}\dfrac{h}{c_r} - \dfrac{1}{2}\left[\dfrac{h}{c_r}\right]^3\right) & \text{if } h \leq c_r \\ \gamma[h] = c_s & \text{if } h > c_r \end{cases} \tag{16.5}$$
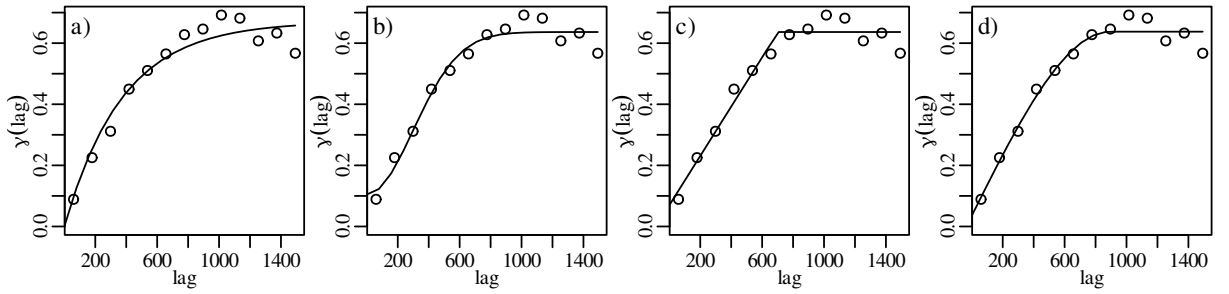
Figure 16.3: Parametric semivariogram fits for the Meuse data, using the a) Gaussian, b) exponential, c) linear and d) spherical models.

Equations 16.2–16.5 contain three parameters:

1. The **range** (c_r) is the distance within which samples are spatially correlated, and beyond which they are independent from each other.

2. The **sill** (c_s) quantifies the long range background variability of the data.

3. The **nugget** (c_n) is the excess variance at zero distance. In principle samples that are co-located should have the same value, but in practice this is not always the case and the semivariogram may have a non-zero intercept. This *nugget effect* may be caused by measurement errors, or by features occurring at scales smaller than the sample.
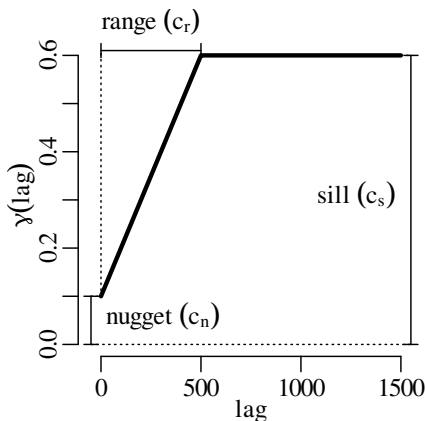
Figure 16.4: Illustration of the range, sill and nugget of a generic linear semivariogram model. The same three parameters also control the shape of the exponential, Gaussian and spherical models. In the case of the Meuse dataset, the nugget effect is likely caused by the fact that the zinc concentrations were averaged over a 15×15 metre area, and that the variability within this sampling area is not captured by the semivariogram.

16.3 Kriging interpolation

The kriging method is named after the South Afrian mining geologist Danie Gerhardus Krige, who laid the foundations for the method in his Master's thesis. Given the best analytical fit

to the semivariogram, the kriging algorithm interpolates the data between the measurements as follows:

$$z(x_\circ, y_\circ) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} w_i z(x_i, y_i) \tag{16.6}$$

where, for the Meuse dataset, $z(x, y)$ is the (logged) zinc concentration at some location $\{x, y\}$; $\{x_i, y_i\}$ are the coordinates of the ith site (out of n); and $\{x_\circ, y_\circ\}$ is the location of the new site for which we want to estimate the zinc concentration. w_i is a weighting parameter that depends on the distance between locations $\{x_i, y_i\}$ and $\{x_\circ, y_\circ\}$ and on the spatial correlation at that distance, which is captured by the analytical fit to the semivariogram. The weights can be estimated with the following matrix expression:

$$
\begin{bmatrix} w_1 \\ w_2 \\ \vdots \\ w_n \\ \lambda \end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix}
c_n & \gamma[h_{1,2}] & \gamma[h_{1,3}] & \dots & \gamma[h_{1,n}] & 1 \\
\gamma[h_{2,1}] & c_n & \gamma[h_{2,3}] & \dots & \gamma[h_{2,n}] & 1 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\
\gamma[h_{n,1}] & \gamma[h_{n,2}] & \gamma[h_{n,3}] & \dots & c_n & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 & 0
\end{bmatrix}^{-1}
\begin{bmatrix} \gamma[h_{1,\circ}] \\ \gamma[h_{2,\circ}] \\ \vdots \\ \gamma[h_{n,\circ}] \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{16.7}
$$

where λ is a *Lagrange multiplier* that is used to ensure that the weights add up to one; and $h_{i,j}$ is the distance between points i and j:

$$h_{i,j} = \sqrt{(x_i - x_j)^2 + (y_i - y_j)^2} \tag{16.8}$$

Fitting a spherical variogram to the Meuse dataset yields a nugget $c_n = 0.035$, a sill $c_s = 0.64$ and a range $c_r = 892$ metres. Fitting a kriging model to location $\{x_\circ = 179850, y_\circ = 331650\}$ of Figure 16.1 then yields the following results:

$$
\begin{bmatrix} w_1 \\ w_2 \\ w_3 \\ \vdots \\ w_{50} \\ \vdots \\ w_{155} \\ \lambda \end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix} 0.0022 \\ -0.00030 \\ 0.00022 \\ \vdots \\ -0.028 \\ \vdots \\ 0.0019 \\ 0.0015 \end{bmatrix} =
\begin{bmatrix}
0.035 & 0.11 & 0.15 & \dots & 0.64 & \dots & 0.64 & 1 \\
0.11 & 0.035 & 0.18 & \dots & 0.64 & \dots & 0.64 & 1 \\
0.15 & 0.18 & 0.035 & \dots & 0.64 & \dots & 0.64 & 1 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0.64 & 0.64 & 0.64 & \dots & 0.035 & \dots & 0.64 & 1 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0.64 & 0.64 & 0.64 & \dots & 0.64 & \dots & 0.035 & 1 \\
1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 & \dots & 1 & 0
\end{bmatrix}^{-1}
\begin{bmatrix} 0.64 \\ 0.64 \\ 0.64 \\ \vdots \\ 0.37 \\ \vdots \\ 0.64 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{16.9}
$$

in which we can recognise the nugget ($c_s = 0.035$) and the sill ($c_s = 0.64$) for all the sample pairs that are separated by a distance of zero or more than $c_r = 892$ metres, respectively. Given the 155 (logged) zinc concentration measurements of Table 16.1, the logged zinc concentration of location $\{x_\circ = 179850, y_\circ = 331650\}$ is given by

$$z_{x_\circ, y_\circ} = 0.0022 \times 6.93 - 0.00030 \times 7.04 + 0.00022 \times 6.46 + \dots - 0.028 \times 5.93 + \dots + 0.0019 \times 5.93 = 5.01$$

which corresponds to a zinc concentration of $\exp[5.01] = 150$ ppm. Repeating the same exercise for a grid of points spanning the entire sampling area:
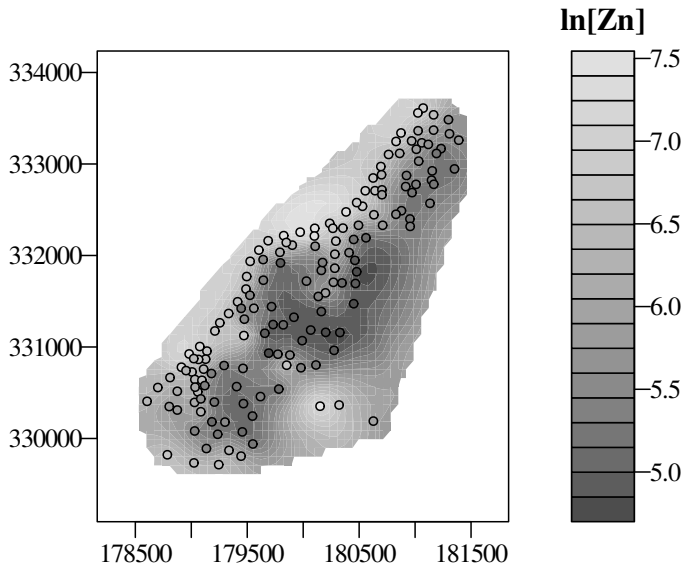
Figure 16.5: The kriging interpolation results for the Meuse dataset shown as a filled contour plot, with the measurements of Figure 16.1 added as points of comparison. The extent of the contour plot is limited to immediate vicinity of the measurements because kriging is an interpolation method and *not* an *extrapolation* method.

The uncertainty (variance) of the kriging estimate is given by

$$s^2(x_\circ, y_\circ) = \lambda + \sum_{i=1}^{n} \gamma[h_{i,\circ}] w_i \tag{16.10}$$

where λ is the Lagrange multiplier of Equation 16.7. For location $\{x_\circ = 179850, y_\circ = 331650\}$:

$$s^2(x_\circ, y_\circ) = 0.0015 + 0.64 \times 0.0022 - 0.64 \times 0.00030 + \ldots = 0.22$$

Using the error propagation formula for the natural logarithm (Equation 8.15), this tells us that the relative uncertainty (i.e. the coefficient of variation) of the new measurement is $s[z]/z = \sqrt{0.22} = 47\%$. Repeating this exercise for the entire grid of $\{x, y\}$-values:
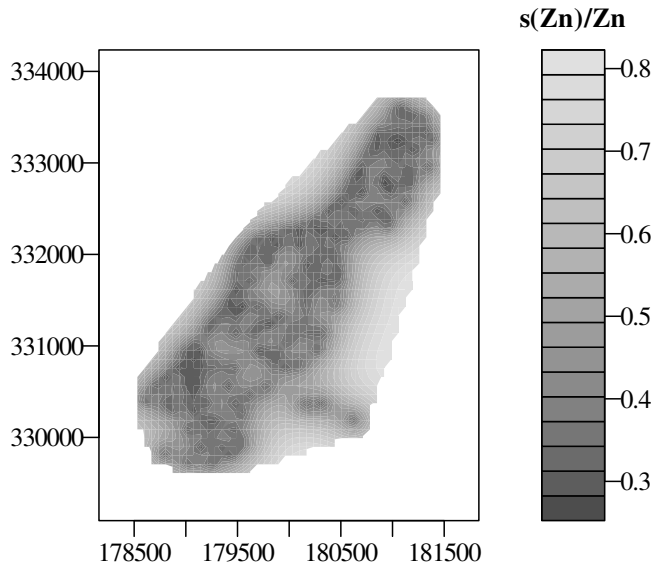
Figure 16.6: Contour plot of the relative uncertainty (coefficient of variation) of the kriging interpolation estimates of Figure 16.5. Note how the uncertainties are the greatest near the edges of the dataset, confirming again that kriging is not an extrapolation but an interpolation method.

The kriging algorithm described in this chapter is known as **ordinary kriging**. Other, more sophisticated variants of the kriging method exist that relax some of the simplifying assumptions that are made by ordinary kriging. For example:

1. Ordinary kriging assumes that the data are **stationary**, and have a constant mean and variance. Minor violations of this assumption can be corrected by detrending the data.

2. The semivariogram models of Section 16.2 assumed that the spatial correlation was **isotropic**. This means that the semivariance was only a function of the lag and not of the direction. This assumption may not always be appropriate. For example, valleys in a fold-and-thrust belt may be preferentially oriented perpendicular to the principal stress direction. To accommodate such situations, anisotropic semivariogram models can be created that require additional parameters.

3. Using Equation 16.6, the kriging interpolation for a new location involved the values of all n measurements. This is fine for the relatively small Meuse dataset ($n = 155$), but for much larger datasets, the matrix inversion of Equation 16.7 becomes computationally too demanding. This problem can be solved by interpolationg using only measurements that are reasonably close to the new sample.

Chapter 17

An introduction to `R`

`R` is an increasingly popular programming language that is available free of charge on any operating system at https://r-project.org. A number of different graphical user interfaces (GUIs) are available for `R`, the most popular of which are `RGui`, `RStudio`, `RCommander` and `Tinn-R`. For this tutorial, however, the simple command line console suffices. This chapter introduces all the functions that are needed to solve the exercises in Chapter 18. A more complete listing of base `R` functions is provided at https://cran.r-project.org/doc/contrib/Short-refcard.pdf.

17.1   The basics

1. We will start this tutorial from the `R` **command prompt**, which is the window that begins with a > symbol. First, do some arithmetic:

```
> 1 + 1
[1] 2
```

`R` prints the result to the command prompt (2 in this case). Here are some other arithmetic operations:

```
> sqrt(2)
[1] 1.414214
> exp(log(10))
[1] 10
> 13%%5
[1] 3
```

2. An arrow operator is used to assign a value to a variable. Note that the arrow can point both ways:

```
> foo <- 2
> 4 -> bar
> foo <- foo*bar
> foo
[1] 8
```

3. Create a vector of numbers:

```
> myvec <- c(2,4,6,8)
> myvec*2
[1]  4  8 12 16
```

Query the third value of the vector:

```
> myvec[3]
[1] 6
```

Change the third value of the vector:

```
> myvec[3] <- 100
```

Change the second and the third value of the vector:

```
> myvec[c(2,3)] <- c(100,101)
```

Create a sequence of numbers:

```
> seq(from=1,to=10,by=1)
 [1]  1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8  9 10
```

Equivalently (output omitted for brevity):

```
> seq(1,10,1)
> seq(1,10)
> seq(to=10,by=1,from=1)
> seq(to=10)
> 1:10
```

Create a 10-element vector of twos:

```
> rep(2,10)
 [1] 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2
```

4. Create a 2 × 4 matrix of ones:

```
> mymat <- matrix(1,nrow=2,ncol=4)
```

Change the third value in the first column of mymat to 3:

```
> mymat[1,3] <- 3
```

Change the entire second column of mymat to 2:

```
> mymat[,2] <- 2
```

Remove the first column from `mymat`:

```
> mymat[,-1]
     [,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]    2    3    1
[2,]    2    1    1
```

Give names to the rows:

```
> rownames(mymat) <- c('first','second')
```

Use the names:

```
> mymat['first',]
[1] 1 2 3 1
```

The transpose of `mymat`:

```
> t(mymat)
     first second
[1,]    1     1
[2,]    2     2
[3,]    3     1
[4,]    1     1
```

Element-wise multiplication ($*$) vs. matrix multiplication (%*%):

```
> mymat*mymat
       [,1] [,2] [,3] [,4]
first     1    4    9    1
second    1    4    1    1
> p <- mymat %*% t(mymat)
> p
       first second
first     15      9
second     9      7
```

The inverse and determinant of a square matrix:

```
> invp <- solve(p)
> det(invp %*% p)
[1] 1
```

5. Lists are used to store more complex data objects:

```
> mylist <- list(v=myvec,m=mymat,nine=9)
> mylist$v
[1] 2 4 6 8
```

or, equivalently:

```
> mylist[[1]]
> mylist[['v']]
```

Data frames are list-like tables:

```
> myframe <- data.frame(period=c('Cz','Mz','Pz','PC'),
+                       SrSr=c(0.708,0.707,0.709,0.708),
+                       fossils=c(TRUE,TRUE,TRUE,FALSE))
> myframe
  period  SrSr fossils
1     Cz 0.708    TRUE
2     Mz 0.707    TRUE
3     Pz 0.709    TRUE
4     PC 0.708   FALSE
```

You can access the items in `myframe` either like a list or like a matrix:

```
> myframe$period == myframe[,'period']
[1] TRUE TRUE TRUE TRUE
```

6. Save data to a text (`.csv`) file:

```
> write.csv(myframe,file='timescale.csv',row.names=FALSE)
```

Read data from a `.csv` file:

```
> myframe2 <- read.csv(file='timescale.csv',header=TRUE)
```

Type `myframe2` at the command prompt to verify that the contents of this new variable match those of `myframe`.

7. Plot the first against the second row of `mymat`:

```
> plot(x=mymat[1,],y=mymat[2,])
```

Draw lines between the points shown on the existing plot:

```
> lines(mymat[1,],mymat[2,])
```

Create a new plot with red lines but no points and a 1:1 aspect ratio for the X- and Y-axis:

```
> plot(mymat[1,],mymat[2,],type='l',col='red',asp=1)
```

Save the currently active plot as a vector-editable .pdf file:

```
> dev.copy2pdf(file="trigonometry.pdf")
```

8. If you want to learn more about a function, type 'help' or '?':

```
> help(c)
> ?plot
```

9. You can also define your own functions:

```
> cube <- function(n){
+     return(n^3)
+ }
```

Using the newly created function:

```
> cube(2)
[1] 8
> result <- cube(3)
```

10. Collect the following commands in a file called 'myscript.R'. Note that the following text box does not contain any '>'-symbols because it is not entered at the command prompt but in a separate text editor:

```
1  # the 'print' function is needed to show intermediate
2  # results when running commands from a .R file
3  print(pi)
```

You can run this code by going back to the command prompt (hence the '>' in the next box) and typing:

```
> source("myscript.R")
[1] 3.141593
```

Note that everything that follows the '#'-symbol was ignored by R.

11. Conditional statements. Replace the contents of myscript.R with:

```
1  toss <- function(){
2      r <- runif(1) # create a random number between 0 and 1
3      if (r<0.5){
4          print("head")
5      } else {
```

```
6          print("tail")
7      }
8  }
```

Save and run at the command prompt:

```
> source('myscript.R')
> toss()
[1] "head"
```

(you might, of course, get `"tail"` when you run this)

12. Loops. Add the following function to `myscript.R`:

```
8   fibonnaci <- function(n=5){ # 5 is the default value
9       if (n < 3) { stop('n must be at least 3') }
10      # seed the output vector with 0 and 1:
11      s <- c(0,1)
12      # loop through all numbers from 3 to n:
13      for (i in 3:n){
14          s[i] <- s[i-1] + s[i-2]
15      }
16      return(s)
17  }
```

Save and run at the command prompt to calculate the first `n` numbers in the Fibonnaci series:

```
> source('myscript.R')
> fibonnaci()
 [1] 0 1 1 2 3
> fibonnaci(10)
 [1]  0  1  1  2  3  5  8 13 21 34
```

13. Arguably the most powerful feature of R is the availability of thousands of community generated *packages* that provide additional functionality. One of these packages is called `geostats` and was specifically created to accompany these notes. To install this package:

```
> install.packages('geostats')
```

Once installed, the package can be loaded into memory by entering:

```
1   library(geostats)
```

Let's use `geostats` to reproduce Figure 6.1:

```
2   data(declustered,package='geostats')
3   quakesperyear <- countQuakes(declustered,minmag=5.0,from=1907,to=2006)
4   barplot(quakesperyear)
```

Type `?declustered` and `?countQuakes` for further details. To view the source code of the `countQuakes` function, just type `countQuakes` at the command prompt:

```
> countQuakes
function(qdat,minmag,from,to){
    bigenough <- (declustered$mag >= minmag)
    youngenough <- (declustered$year >= from)
    oldenough <- (declustered$year <= to)
    goodenough <- (bigenough & youngenough & oldenough)
    table(qdat$year[goodenough])
}
```

where `table` produces a table with the counts of each value.

17.2 Plotting data

In the remainder of this text, we will assume that the `geostats` package has been loaded into memory:

```
library(geostats)
```

1. The Anscombe quartet of Table 2.1 and Figure 2.1 is built into R. You can have a look at it by typing `anscombe` at the command prompt. We can then create Figure 2.1:

```
1   par(mfrow=c(1,4))
2   plot(anscombe$x1,anscombe$y1)
3   plot(anscombe$x2,anscombe$y2)
4   plot(anscombe$x3,anscombe$y3)
5   plot(anscombe$x4,anscombe$y4)
```

where `par(mfrow=c(1,4))` creates a 1×4 grid of plot panels. Note that we can also write this more generically:

```
1   np <- 4 # np = 'number of panels'
2   p <- par(mfrow=c(1,np))
3   for (i in 1:np){
4     plot(anscombe[,i],anscombe[,i+np])
5   }
```

Or, adding a few options to make the plot look exactly like Figure 2.1:

```
3  titles <- c('I','II','III','IV')
4  for (i in 1:np){
5    plot(anscombe[,i],anscombe[,i+np],
6         xlab='x',ylab='y',pch=19,main=titles[i])
7  }
```

2. Creating a histogram of clast counts (Figure 2.2):

```
1  counts <- c(10,5,6,20)
2  names(counts) <- c('granite','basalt','gneiss','quartzite')
3  barplot(counts,col='white')
```

The geostats package includes a number of datasets, such as the pH data of Section 2.3. Loading this dataset with R's data(...) function and plotting it on a histogram and rug plot:

```
1  data(pH,package='geostats')
2  hist(pH)
3  rug(pH)
```

Changing the number of bins:

```
2  par(mfrow=c(1,2))
3  hist(pH,breaks=5)
4  hist(pH,breaks=10)
```

Specifying the position of the bins:

```
3  hist(pH,breaks=seq(from=3,to=7,by=0.5))
4  hist(pH,breaks=seq(from=3.25,to=6.75,by=0.5))
```

3. A kernel density estimate (KDE) and rug plot of the pH data (Section 2.3 and Figure 2.9):

```
1  dens <- density(pH)
2  plot(dens)
3  rug(pH)
```

A KDE of the log-transformed clast size data (Figure 2.12):

```
1  data(clasts,package='geostats')
2  lc <- log(clasts)
3  d <- density(lc)
4  plot(d)
```

Subjecting the porosity data to a logistic transformation before plotting as a KDE:

```
1  data(porosity,package='geostats')
2  lp <- logit(porosity)
3  d <- density(lp)
4  plot(d)
```

where the `logit(...)` function is provided by the `geostats` package. To map the density estimate from the logistic scale $(-\infty, +\infty)$ back to the normal porosity scale $(0, 1)$:

```
2  lp <- logit(porosity,inverse=FALSE)
3  ld <- density(lp)
4  d <- logit(ld,inverse=TRUE)
5  plot(d)
```

Note that we are using the `logit(...)` twice using different inputs. In programming jargon, the function has been **overloaded**. To inspect the R-code of the two implementations, just type `logit.default` and `logit.density` at the command prompt.

4. The Old Faithful geyser data of section 2.5 are included with R. Plotting the eruption durations and waiting times proceeds in exactly the same way as point 3 above:

```
1  x <- faithful[,'waiting']
2  y <- faithful[,'eruptions']
3  par(mfrow=c(2,1))
4  plot(density(x),xlab='minutes',main='waiting time')
5  rug(x)
6  plot(density(y),xlab='minutes',main='eruption duration')
7  rug(y)
```

where we have **nested** the `density` and `plot` functions for the sake of brevity. Two-dimensional KDEs are not part of base R. To access this functionality, we must first load the important `MASS` ('Mathematical and Applied Statistics with S[1]') package.

```
3  library(MASS)
4  kde2 <- kde2d(x,y)
5  contour(kde2)
6  points(x,y)
```

5. Calculate the empirical cumulative distribution function of the pH data:

```
1  data(pH,package='geostats')
2  cdf <- ecdf(pH)
3  plot(cdf)
```

Adding some optional arguments to produce an output that is more similar to Figure 2.16a:

---

[1] `S` is the name of the programming language. `R` is a free implementation of `S`, and `S-PLUS` is a commercial alternative.

```
3   plot(cdf,verticals=TRUE,pch=NA)
```

where `pch=NA` removes the plot characters, and `verticals=TRUE` is self explanatory.

The `ecdf` function produces another function that can be evaluated at any value. For example, if we want to evaluate the fraction of pH values that are less than 4.5:

```
> cdf(4.5)
[1] 0.25
```

which means that there are 25% such values.

17.3   Summary Statistics

1. Calculating summary statistics in R is straightforward:

```
> data(pH,package='geostats')
> mean(pH)
[1] 4.985
> sd(pH) # standard deviation
[1] 0.6698586
> median(pH)
[1] 5.1
> mad(pH) # median absolute deviation
[1] 0.7413
> IQR(pH) # interquartile range
[1] 0.95
```

2. R does not come with a function to calculate the mode[2] so we have to write our own. For categorical data, the mode is the most frequently occurring value. Using the declustered earthquake counts of Figure 2.3 as an example:

```
1   data(declustered,package='geostats')
2   quakesperyear <- countQuakes(declustered,minmag=5.0,from=1917,to=2016)
3   quaketab <- table(quakesperyear)
4   mod <- which.max(quaketab)
```

where `which.max` returns the index or name of the maximum value. A more sophisticated implementation is included in a `geostats` function called `Mode`[3].

For continuous variables, in which there are no duplicate values, we use a KDE to determine the mode:

---

[2] There does exist a `mode` function but it does something different.

[3] Note the uppercase 'M' in `Mode`, which aims to avoid the conflict with the `mode` function mentioned in footnote 2. R is case sensitive.

```
4   data(clasts,package='geostats')
5   dens <- density(clasts)
6   mod <- dens$x[which.max(dens$y)]
```

The skewness is not implemented in R either. But it easy to write a function for that as well, based on Equation 3.5:

```
7   skew <- function(x){
8      mean((x-mean(x))^3)/sd(x)^3
9   }
```

3. A box plot for the clast size data:

```
10   boxplot(clasts)
```

17.4   Probability

1. The factorial operator (!) in Chapter 4 is implemented as `factorial(x)`. For example:

```
> factorial(1)
[1] 1
> factorial(10)
[1] 3628800
> factorial(100)
[1] 9.332622e+157
> factorial(1000)
[1] Inf
```

`factorial(x)` fails to calculate !1000. For large numbers like this, it is better to use `lfactorial(x)`, which returns the natural logarithm of the factorial:

```
> lfactorial(1000)
[1] 1792.332
```

which means that $1000! = e^{1792.332}$.

2. Similarly, the combinations $\binom{n}{k}$ of small numbers can be calculated with `choose(n,k)`:

```
> choose(n=10,k=2)
[1] 45
> choose(n=10000,k=2000)
[1] Inf
```

and for large numbers with `lchoose(n,k)`:

```
> lchoose(n=10000,k=2000)
[1] 4999.416
```

which means that there are $e^{4999.416}$ ways to choose 2,000 items from a collection of 10,000.

17.5   The binomial distribution

1. Flip 10 coins and count the number of heads:

```
> rbinom(n=1,size=10,prob=0.5)
```

Repeat 50 times and plot the outcomes as a histogram:

```
1  d <- rbinom(n=50,size=10,prob=0.5)
2  hist(d)
```

2. Calculate the probability of observing 4 heads out of 10 throws:

```
> dbinom(x=4,size=10,prob=0.5)
[1] 0.2050781
```

Plot the probability mass function (PMF) of the binomial distribution (Equation 5.1) with $n = 10$ and $p = 0.5$:

```
1  k <- 0:10
2  pmf <- dbinom(x=k,size=10,prob=0.5)
3  barplot(height=pmf,names.arg=k)
```

where `names.arg` specifies the labels of the bar plot.

3. The probability of observing 4 or fewer heads out of 10 throws:

```
> pbinom(q=4,size=10,prob=0.5)
[1] 0.3769531
```

Plot the cumulative distribution function (CDF) of the binomial distribution (Equation 5.2) with $n = 10$ and $p = 0.5$:

```
1  cdf <- pbinom(q=0:10,size=10,prob=0.5)
2  plot(cdf,type='s')
```

4. Calculate the quantiles of the binomial distribution. For example, assume that there is a $p = 2/3$ chance of finding gold in claim, and suppose that there are $n = 15$ claims. Then there is a 95% chance that the number of successful claims is less than

```
> qbinom(p=0.95,size=15,prob=2/3)
[1] 13
```

where the argument `p` must not be confused with the parameter p in Equation 5.1. The latter parameter is referred to as `prob` in R's binomial functions.

Conversely, if $p = 2/3$, then there is a 95% chance that the number of successful gold discoveries among 15 claims is *greater* than or equal to

```
> qbinom(p=0.95,size=15,prob=2/3,lower.tail=FALSE)
[1] 7
```

or, equivalently:

```
> qbinom(p=0.05,size=15,prob=2/3)
[1] 7
```

Thus the rejection region for the one-sided null hypothesis $H_\circ : p = 2/3$ vs. the alternative hypothesis $H_a : p > 2/3$ is $R = \{0, \ldots, 6\}$ (Equation 5.5).

5. The boundaries of the rejection region for the two-sided null hypothesis $H_\circ : p = 2/3$ vs. the alternative hypothesis $H_a : p \neq 2/3$ are given by

```
> qbinom(p=c(0.025,0.975),size=15,prob=2/3)
[1] 6 13
```

Hence $R = \{0, \ldots, 5, 14, 15\}$ (Equation 5.6).

6. Based on the 1-sided rejection region calculated under point 4, a success rate of 6 gold discoveries out of 15 claims is incompatible with the null hypothesis $H_\circ : p = 2/3$ vs. the one-sided alternative hypothesis $H_a : p < 2/3$. This is because $6 \in R = \{0, \ldots, 6\}$. Here is another way to obtain the same result:

```
> binom.test(x=6,n=15,p=2/3,alternative='less',conf.level = 0.95)


        Exact binomial test

data:  6 and 15
number of successes = 6, number of trials = 15, p-value = 0.03083
alternative hypothesis: true probability of success is less than 0.666667
95 percent confidence interval:
 0.0000000 0.6404348
sample estimates:
probability of success
               0.4
```

This result shows a p-value of $0.03083 < 0.05$, leading to the rejection of $H_\circ$. The 95% confidence interval for p spans the range from 0 to 0.6404348, which does not include the hypothesised value of $p = 2/3$.

7. Based on the 2-sided rejection region calculated under point 5, a success rate of 6 gold discoveries out of 15 claims is compatible with the null hypothesis $H_\circ : p = 2/3$ vs. the one-sided alternative hypothesis $H_a : p \neq 2/3$. This is because $6 \notin R = \{0, \ldots, 5, 14, 15\}$. Hence we cannot reject $H_\circ$ in this case. Here is another way to obtain the same result:

```
> h <- binom.test(x=6,n=15,p=2/3,alternative='two.sided',conf.level=0.95)
> h$p.value
[1] 0.05023902
> h$conf.int
[1] 0.1633643 0.6771302
attr(,"conf.level")
[1] 0.95
```

where we have stored the output of `binom.test(...)` in a variable `h`. $H_\circ$ cannot be rejected because the p-value is $0.05024 > 0.05$, and the confidence interval ranges from 0.1633643 to 0.6771302, which includes $p = 2/3$.

17.6   The Poisson distribution

1. Create a histogram of 100 random values from a Poisson distribution with parameter $\lambda = 3.5$:

```
1  d <- rpois(n=100,lambda=3.5)
2  hist(d)
```

2. Calculate the probability of observing 0 successes if $\lambda = 3.5$:

```
> dpois(x=0,lambda=3.5)
[1] 0.03019738
```

Plot the probability mass function (PMF, evaluated up to 15 successes) of the Poisson distribution (Equation 6.1) for $\lambda = 3.5$.

```
1  k <- 0:15
2  pmf <- dpois(x=k,lambda=3.5)
3  barplot(height=pmf,names.arg=k)
```

3. The probability of observing 9 or fewer successes if $\lambda = 3.5$:

```
> ppois(q=9, lambda=3.5)
[1] 0.9966851
```

Plot the CDF of the Poisson distribution with $\lambda = 3.5$:

```
1  cdf <- ppois(q=k,lambda=3.5)
2  plot(cdf,type='s')
```

4. The rejection region ($\alpha = 0.05$) for a one-sided hypothesis $H_\circ : \lambda = 3.5$ vs. $H_a : \lambda > 3.5$ (Section 6.3):

```
> qpois(p=0.95,lambda=3.5)
[1] 7
```

Hence $R = \{8, \ldots, \infty\}$ (see Section 6.3.6).

5. The two-sided rejection region:

```
> qpois(p=c(0.025,0.975),lambda=3.5)
[1] 0 8
```

Hence $R = \{9, \ldots, \infty\}$.

6. Based on the 1-sided rejection region calculated under point 4, a success rate of 9 zircons per grid is incompatible with the null hypothesis $H_\circ : \lambda = 3.5$ vs. the one-sided alternative hypothesis $H_a : \lambda > 3.5$. This is because $9 \in R = \{9, \ldots, \infty\}$. Here is another way to obtain the same result:

```
> h <- poisson.test(x=9,r=3.5,alternative='greater',conf.level=0.95)
> h$p.value
[1] 0.009873658
```

The p-value is $0.009873658 < 0.05$, leading to a rejection of $H_\circ$. The 95% confidence interval is given by:

```
> h$conf.int
[1] 4.695228      Inf
```

$(\lambda = 3.5) \notin [4.695228, \infty)$. Hence, $H_\circ$ is rejected.

7. Based on the 2-sided rejection region calculated under point 5, a success rate of 9 is incompatible with the null hypothesis $H_\circ : \lambda = 3.5$ vs. the one-sided alternative hypothesis $H_a : \lambda \neq 3.5$. This is because $9 \in R = \{9, \ldots, \infty\}$. This again leads to rejection of $H_\circ$ in favour of H_a. We can obtain the same result with `poisson.test`:

```
> poisson.test(x=9,r=3.5,alternative='two.sided',conf.level=0.95)

        Exact Poisson test

data:  9 time base: 1
number of events = 9, time base = 1, p-value = 0.009874
alternative hypothesis: true event rate is not equal to 3.5
95 percent confidence interval:
  4.115373 17.084803
sample estimates:
event rate
        9
```

17.7   The normal distribution

1. Generate 100 random numbers from a normal distribution with mean $\mu = 50$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 5$, and plot as a histogram:

```
1  d <- rnorm(n=100,mean=50,sd=5)
2  hist(d)
```

2. Generate 200 random pairs of numbers ($\{x_i, y_i\}$ for $1 \le i \le 200$) from a bivariate normal distribution with mean $\{\mu_x = 10, \mu_y = 20\}$ and covariance matrix

$$\sigma_{x,y} = \left[\begin{array}{cc} \sigma_x^2 = 2 & \sigma_{x,y} = -3 \\ \sigma_{x,y} = -3 & \sigma_y^2 = 6 \end{array} \right]$$

```
1  library(MASS)
2  m <- c(10,20)
3  s <- matrix(data=c(2,-3,-3,6),nrow=2,ncol=2)
4  xy <- mvrnorm(n=200,mu=m,Sigma=s)
5  plot(xy)
```

3. Plot the PDF and CDF of a normal distribution with mean $\mu = 50$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 5$:

```
1  par(mfrow=c(1,2))
2  m <- 50
3  s <- 5
4  x <- seq(from=25,to=75,length.out=100)
5  f <- dnorm(x=x,mean=m,sd=s)
6  plot(x=x,y=f,type='l',main='PDF')
7  P <- pnorm(q=x,mean=m,sd=s)
8  plot(x=x,y=P,type='l',ylab='P(X<x)',main='CDF')
```

17.8   Error propagation

Propagating analytical uncertainties using the procedures of Section 8.2 is a manual process that does not require R. However, R does fulfil a useful purpose for the Fisher Information approach of Section 8.4. In Section 8.4, we manually showed that $s[\hat{\lambda}] = \hat{\lambda}$. This Section will show how R can do the same thing numerically.

1. Recall the log-likelihood function for the Poisson distribution (Equation 6.4):

$$\mathcal{LL}(\lambda|k) = k \ln[\lambda] - \lambda - \sum_{i=1}^{k} i$$

Implementing this in R:

```
1  LL <- function(lambda,k){
2    k * log(lambda) - lambda - sum(1:k)
3  }
```

2. Evaluating LL for different values of `lambda` assuming that `k=4`.

```
4   N <- 100
5   lam <- seq(from=0,to=20,length.out=N)
6   loglik <- rep(0,N)
7   for (i in 1:N){
8     loglik[i] <- LL(lambda=lam[i],k=4)
9   }
10  plot(lam,loglik,type='l',xlab=expression(lambda),ylab='LL')
```

which produces the following output:
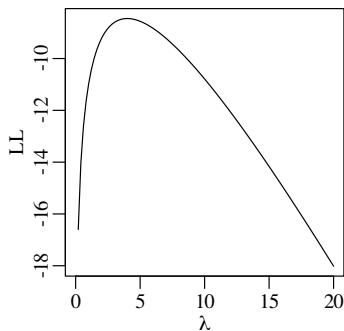
Figure 17.1: Log-likelihood function for the Poisson distribution, evaluated at different values for the parameter λ, given an observation of $k = 4$ successes. The function reaches a maximum value at $\hat{\lambda} = 4$.

3. We can find the maximum likelihood estimate for λ using R's general purpose `optim` function[4], using `par=1` as an initial guess for λ:

```
11  o <-  optim(par=1,f=LL,k=4,control=list(fnscale=-1),method='BFGS')
```

The control parameter `fnscale=-1` ensures that `optim` finds the *maximum* value of `LL` rather than its minimum (which is the default). And `BFGS` is one of several minimisation algorithms that is well suited for one-dimensional optimisation problems. See `?optim` for further details. The maximum likelihood estimate is then obtained by:

```
> o$par
[1] 4.000001
```

which yields a value of $\hat{\lambda} = 4$, ignoring a small numerical error.

4. To estimate the uncertainty of $\hat{\lambda}$ using the Fisher Information approach of Equation 8.26 requires just a small change to our code:

---

[4]An alternative (and easier) function is `optimise` but this does not compute the Hessian matrix.

```
11   o <-  optim(par=1,f=LL,k=4,control=list(fnscale=-1),
12              method='BFGS',hessian=TRUE)
```

Equation 8.26 then becomes:

```
> -1/o$hessian
           [,1]
[1,] 4.000001
```

So $s[\hat{\lambda}]^2 = 4$, which is the same result as we derived by hand in Equation 8.29.

17.9   Comparing distributions

1. Create a Q-Q plot comparing the Old Faithful eruption durations with the eruption waiting times:

```
1   qqplot(faithful[,'eruptions'],faithful[,'waiting'])
```

Create a Q-Q plot comparing the eruption durations with a normal distribution (Figure 9.1):

```
1   dat <- faithful[,'eruptions']
2   qqnorm(dat)
3   qqline(dat)
```

2. Perform the one-sided, one-sample t-test of Section 9.2 (page 76):

```
1   gold1 <- c(19.07,19.09,19.17,19.18,19.31)
2   h <- t.test(gold1,mu=19.30,alternative='less')
```

The p-value of this test is

```
> h$p.value
[1] 0.01630814
```

which is less than 0.05, leading to a rejection of $H_\circ : \mu = 19.30$. Equivalently, the 95% confidence interval is

```
> h$conf.int
[1]     -Inf 19.25435
```

$\mu = 19.30 \notin (-\infty, 19.25435]$, which again leads to a rejected null hypothesis.

3. Comparing two sets of coins with a two-sided, two-sample test:

```
2   gold2 <- c(19.17,19.30,19.31,19.32)
3   h <- t.test(gold1,gold2)
```

Inspecting the p-value and two-sided 95% confidence interval:

```
> h$p.value
[1] 0.0839384
> h$conf.int
[1] -0.24136871   0.01936871
```

We cannot reject $H_\circ : \mu_1 = \mu_2$ because $0.0839384 > 0.05$, and because $\{-0.24136871 \leq 0 \leq 0.01936871\}$.

4. To carry out the χ^2-test of Section 9.4, we first calculate the declustered earthquake frequencies.

```
1   data(declustered,package='geostats')
2   quakesperyear <- countQuakes(declustered,minmag=5.0,from=1917,to=2016)
3   quaketab <- table(quakesperyear)
```

Printing the table of earthquake counts per year at the console

```
> table(quakesperyear)
quakesperyear
  1   2   3   4   5   6   7   8   9 10 11 12
  3   8 13 17 13 14 13   5   8   3   1   2
```

shows that there are four bins with fewer than 4 items. In order for the χ^2-approximation to be valid, we must merge some of these categories:

```
3   obs <- c( sum(quaketab[1:2]), quaketab[3:9], sum(quaketab[10:12]) )
```

The corresponding predicted counts are obtained using a Poisson distribution with parameter given by the mean of the earthquake counts:

```
4   lam <- mean(quakesperyear)
5   pred <- c(sum(dpois(x=0:2,lambda=lam)),
6           dpois(x=3:9,lambda=lam),
7           sum(dpois(x=10:25,lambda=lam))
8           )
```

Then the χ^2-test proceeds as follows:

```
9   h <- chisq.test(x=obs,p=pred/sum(pred))
```

where `pred/sum(pred)` normalises the predicted probabilities to 1. Querying the p-value:

```
> h$p.value
[1] 0.7429772
```

$0.7429772 > 0.05$, hence $H_\circ$ is not rejected.

5. Comparing the two collections of gold coins from item 3 above but this time using a Wilcoxon test instead of a t-test:

```
1  gold1 <- c(19.07,19.09,19.17,19.18,19.31)
2  gold2 <- c(19.17,19.30,19.31,19.32)
3  h <- wilcox.test(x=gold1,y=gold2)
```

Querying the p-value:

```
> h$p.value
[1] 0.174277
```

We cannot reject $H_\circ$ because $0.174277 > 0.05$.

6. Load two detrital zircon U–Pb age distributions from the Mu Us desert and Yellow River into memory, and compare them with the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test:

```
1  data(DZ,package='geostats')
2  river <- DZ[['Y']]
3  dune <- DZ[['5']]
4  h <- ks.test(x=river,y=dune)
```

Querying the result:

```
> h$p.value
[1] 4.500822e-05
```

$4.500822 \times 10^{-5} \ll 0.05$ and hence $H_\circ$ is clearly rejected.

17.10   Regression

1. Load the Rb–Sr data from the geostats package and plot the columns RbSr and SrSr as a scatter plot:

```
1  data(rbsr,package='geostats')
2  plot(x=rbsr[,'RbSr'],y=rbsr[,'SrSr'])
```

Calculate the correlation coefficient of RbSr and SrSr:

```
3  cormat <- cor(rbsr[,c('RbSr','SrSr')])
4  r <- cormat[1,2]
```

which yields:

```
> r
[1] 0.9847415
> r^2
[1] 0.9697158
```

2. Fit a line to the data using the method of least squares:

```
4  fit <- lm(SrSr ~ RbSr, data=rbsr)
```

which uses R's **formula notation** (Y ~ X where X is the independent variable and Y is the dependent variable).

Query the slope and intercept:

```
> fit$coefficients
(Intercept)          RbSr
 0.69742660   0.01391808
```

So the best fit line is given by $[^{87}Sr/^{86}Sr] = 0.696 + 0.014\ [^{87}Rb/^{86}Sr]$ (rounded to two significant digits). Add the best fit line to the existing scatter plot:

```
5  x <- range(rbsr[,'RbSr'])
6  y <- fit$coefficients[1] + fit$coefficients[2]*x
7  lines(x,y)
```

Or, equivalently:

```
6  y <- predict(fit, newdata=data.frame(RbSr=x))
7  lines(x,y)
```

Or, shorter:

```
5  abline(fit)
```

3. Test the statistical significance of the correlation coefficient using Equation 10.6:

```
6  n <- nrow(rbsr)
7  tstat <- r*sqrt(n-2)/sqrt(1-r^2)
8  p <- pt(q=tstat,df=n-2)
```

which gives:

```
> p
[1] 0.9999956
```

Hence the p-value for $H_\circ : \beta_0 = 0$ vs. $H_a : \beta_0 \neq 0$ is:

```
> 2*(1-p)
[1] 8.779983e-06
```

Thus $H_\circ$ is rejected and the linear trend is real. An easier way to obtain the same result is to apply the `summary(...)` function to the output of the `lm(...)`:

```
> summary(fit)

Call:
lm(formula = SrSr ~ RbSr, data = rbsr)

Residuals:
      Min        1Q    Median        3Q       Max
-0.007887 -0.004425 -0.002511  0.006451  0.009178

Coefficients:
            Estimate Std. Error t value Pr(>|t|)
(Intercept) 0.697427   0.006273  111.18 3.57e-11 ***
RbSr        0.013918   0.001004   13.86 8.78e-06 ***
---
Signif. codes:  0 '***' 0.001 '**' 0.01 '*' 0.05 '.' 0.1 ' ' 1

Residual standard error: 0.007092 on 6 degrees of freedom
Multiple R-squared:  0.9697,        Adjusted R-squared:  0.9647
F-statistic: 192.1 on 1 and 6 DF,  p-value: 8.78e-06
```

in which we can recognise both the p-value and r^2, as well as lots of other information about the fit.

4. Construct a 95% confidence envelope for the linear fit:

```
9   x <- seq(from=min(rbsr[,'RbSr']),to=max(rbsr[,'RbSr']),length.out=20)
10  pred <- predict(fit,newdata=data.frame(RbSr=x),
11               interval="confidence",level=0.95)
12  matlines(x,pred,lty=1,col='black')
```

where `matlines` simultaneously plots multiple lines. Adding a prediction interval to the existing plot:

```
13  pred <- predict(fit,newdata=data.frame(RbSr=x),
14               interval="prediction",level=0.95)
15  matlines(x,pred,lty=2,col='black')
```

5. The `rbsr` file contains five columns, specifying the ratios as well as their uncertainties and error correlations:

```
> rbsr
  RbSr errRbSr  SrSr errSrSr   rho
1 2.90  0.0944 0.745 0.00702 0.586
2 7.14  0.0970 0.803 0.00625 0.470
3 9.10  0.1040 0.823 0.00740 0.476
4 3.41  0.1040 0.737 0.00697 0.468
5 1.91  0.0967 0.720 0.00676 0.486
6 7.15  0.1110 0.793 0.00749 0.507
7 5.92  0.0948 0.789 0.00632 0.561
8 8.28  0.1070 0.807 0.00678 0.460
```

Plotting these data as error ellipses and implementing the weighted least squares regression algorithm of Section 10.5 is not trivial in base R. Fortunately, the `geostats` package comes to the rescue:

```
2  y <- york(x=rbsr)
```

The name of the weighted least squares regression refers to geophysicists Derek York, who developed an early version of the algorithm[5].

17.11 Fractals and chaos

1. Calculate and plot the size-frequency distribution of Finnish lakes (Figure 11.5):

```
1  data(Finland,package='geostats')
2  sf <- sizefrequency(Finland$area)
3  plot(frequency~size,data=sf,log='xy')
4  fit <- lm(log(frequency)~log(size),data=sf)
5  lines(x=sf$size,y=exp(predict(fit)))
```

where the `sizefrequency` function is provided by `geostats`.

2. Create a Gutenberg-Richter plot for the recent earthquake data (Figure 11.3):

```
1  data(earthquakes,package='geostats')
2  gutenberg(earthquakes$mag)
```

where `gutenberg` is a `geostats` function that is similar to the Finnish lake code of step 1. You can check out the implementation details by typing '`gutenberg`' at the command prompt.

3. Create a *Koch snowflake*, i.e. a triangle of three Koch curves (Figures 11.13-11.16):

```
1  k <- koch(n=5)
```

---

[5]York, D., 1968. Least squares fitting of a straight line with correlated errors. *Earth and Planetary Science Letters*, 5, pp.320-324.

Compute the fractal dimension of the curve:

```
2   fit <- fractaldim(k)
```

which yield a slope of -1.2 and, hence, a fractal dimension of 1.2.

17.12 Unsupervised learning

1. The `geostats` package includes a function called `PCA2D` that can be used to reproduce Figures 12.2–12.4:

```
1   X <- rbind(c(-1,7),c(3,2),c(4,3))
2   colnames(X) <- c('a','b')
3   PCA2D(X)
```

where `rbind` binds three rows together into one matrix.

2. Verifying the equivalence of PCA and classical MDS:

```
3   d <- dist(X)           # create a Euclidean distance matrix
4   conf <- cmdscale(d)    # classical MDS
5   plot(conf,type='n')    # create an empty plot
6   text(conf,labels=1:3)  # add text labels to the empty plot
```

This script produces the same output as the first panel of `PCA2D`.

3. R contains not one but two built-in PCA functions: `prcomp` and `princomp`. Both produce essentially the same output but use different algebraic algorithms[6] to achieve the matrix decomposition of Equation 12.2. Applying `prcomp` to the US arrests data to produce the biplot shown in Figure 12.5:

```
1   pc <- prcomp(USArrests,scale.=TRUE)
2   biplot(pc)
```

4. Reproducing the MDS analysis of European road distances of Figure 12.7:

```
1   conf <- cmdscale(eurodist)
2   plot(conf,type='n',asp=1)
3   text(conf,labels=labels(eurodist))
```

Repeating the same exercise using nonmetric MDS:

```
1   library(MASS)
2   mds <- isoMDS(eurodist)
3   conf <- mds$points
4   plot(conf,type='n',asp=1)
5   text(conf,labels=labels(eurodist))
```

---

[6]`prcomp` uses singular value decomposition, whereas `princomp` uses an eigen docomposition.

Flip the y-axis to make the MDS configuration look more like the map of Europe:

```
4   ylim <- rev(range(conf[,2])) # reverse the minimum and maximum values
5   plot(conf,type='n',asp=1,ylim=ylim) # change the y-axis limits
```

Assess the goodness of fit on a Shepard plot:

```
4   sh <- Shepard(d=eurodist,x=conf)
5   stress <- signif(mds$stress,2)
6   plot(sh,main=paste0('stress=',stress))
```

where `signif(x,2)` rounds `x` to 2 significant digits.

5. Visualise the iris data in a 4×4 grid of scatter plots (Figure 12.15):

```
1   measurements <- iris[,-5]
2   species <- iris[,5]
3   plot(measurements,pch=as.numeric(species))
```

where `as.numeric` converts the species to numbers, which are subsequently used as colours. Classify the data into three groups using the k-means algorithm:

```
4   fit <- kmeans(measurements,centers=3)
```

Compare the classes to the known species of the flowers:

```
> table(fit$cluster,species)
    setosa versicolor virginica
  1      0          2        36
  2      0         48        14
  3     50          0         0
```

6. Hierarchical clustering of the iris data:

```
1   tree <- hclust(dist(measurements))
2   plot(tree)
```

Cutting the tree down to three branches:

```
1   treecut <- cutree(tree,k=3)
2   table(treecut,species)
```

17.13   Supervised learning

1. Discriminant analysis is implemented in the MASS package:

```
1  library(MASS)
2  ld <- lda(Species ~ ., data=iris)
```

Predict the species of a new flower with a sepal length of 6.0 cm, a sepal width of 3.0 cm, a petal length of 5.0 cm and a petal width of 1.5 cm:

```
3  newflower <- data.frame(Sepal.Length=6.0,Sepal.Width=3.0,
4                          Petal.Length=5.0,Petal.Width=1.5)
5  pred <- predict(ld,newdata=newflower)
```

Query the posterior likelihoods of the LDA classification:

```
> pred$posterior
        setosa versicolor virginica
1 3.207192e-27  0.8098087 0.1901913
```

which means that there is an 81% chance that the new flower is *versicolor* and a 19% chance that it is *virginica*.

Hence the predicted species of the new flower is:

```
> pred$class
[1] versicolor
```

2. To apply quadratic discriminant analysis, we simply replace lda by qda in the previous code:

```
2  qd <- qda(Species ~ ., data=iris)
```

which produces the following outcome:

```
> predict(qd,newdata=newflower)$posterior
         setosa versicolor virginica
1 2.147589e-103  0.7583223 0.2416777
```

Thus, according to QDA, there is a 76% probability that the new flower is *versicolor*, and a 24% chance that it is *virginica*.

3. Decision trees are implemented in the rpart package:

```
1  library(rpart)
2  tree <- rpart(Species ~ ., data=iris, method="class")
3  plot(tree)
4  text(tree)
```

To add the misclassification rates to the tree:

```
4   text(tree, use.n=TRUE)
```

Using the `newflower` data frame that we created in step 1, the class probabilities are:

```
> predict(object=tree,newdata=newflower)
  setosa versicolor  virginica
1      0  0.9074074 0.09259259
```

which leads to the following classification:

```
> predict(object=tree,newdata=newflower,type='class')
         1
versicolor
```

17.14   Compositional data

1. Load the A–CN–K data of Section 14.2 into memory and transform them from the ternary simplex to bivariate logratio space using the alr transformation:

```
1   data(ACNK,package='geostats')
2   uv <- alr(ACNK)
3   plot(uv)
```

where the `alr` function is provided by the `geostats` package (type `alr` at the command prompt to see the code). Computing the mean and covariance matrix of the logratio data:

```
3   mu <- colMeans(uv)
4   covmat <- cov(uv)
```

Add the mean to the logratio plot as a black square and the confidence ellipse as a polygon:

```
5   points(x=mu[1],y=mu[2],pch=22,bg='black')
6   ell <- ellipse(mu,covmat)
7   polygon(ell)
```

2. Plot the A–CN–K data on a ternary diagram:

```
1   ternary(ACNK,labels=c(expression('Al'[2]*'O'[3]),
2                         expression('CaO+Na'[2]*'O'),
3                         expression('K'[2]*'O')))
```

where the `expression` function allows R to use subscripts and special characters in text labels. Mapping the logratio mean and error ellipse back to the ternary diagram:

```
4   ternary(alr(mu,inverse=TRUE),add=TRUE,type='p',pch=22,bg='black')
5   ternary(alr(ell,inverse=TRUE),add=TRUE,type='l')
```

3. Apply PCA to the major element compositions of Table 14.1:

```
3   data(major,package='geostats')
4   comp <- clr(major)
5   pc <- prcomp(comp)
6   biplot(pc)
```

4. Apply LDA to the AFM data of Figure 14.9:

```
1   library(MASS)
2   data(FAM,package='geostats')
3   affinity <- FAM[,1]
4   comp <- alr(FAM[,-1])
5   ld <- lda(x=comp,grouping=affinity)
```

where the `lda` function does not use formula notation (Section 17.13) but an alternative format (see `?lda` for further details). Classify a new rock with 1 wt% FeO, 8 wt% Na_2O+K_2O, and 0.1 wt% MgO:

```
4   newrock <- data.frame(F=1,A=8,M=0.1)
5   newcomp <- alr(newrock)
6   pr <- predict(object=ld,newdata=newcomp)
```

This produces:

```
> pr$posterior
             ca           th
[1,] 0.9931941 0.006805909
```

which suggests that the new sample is a calc-alkaline basalt.

17.15   Directional data

Base R includes little or no functionality for directional data analysis. So this tutorial will heavily depend on the `geostats` package.

1. Load the glacial striation data into memory and plot them on a circle:

```
1   data(striations,package='geostats')
2   circle.plot(striations,degrees=TRUE)
```

where the `degrees` option accounts for the fact that the `striations` data are expressed in degrees. Change to `degrees=FALSE` for radians. Add the arithmetic mean and vector mean to the plot as a white and black square, respectively:

```
3  circle.points(mean(striations),pch=22,bg='white',degrees=TRUE)
4  md <- meanangle(striations,degrees=TRUE)
5  circle.points(md,pch=21,bg='black',degrees=TRUE)
```

2. Compute the concentration parameter $\bar{R}$:

```
1  R <- Rbar(striations,degrees=TRUE)
```

Converting to the von Mises parameter κ using Equation 15.6:

```
2  k <- Rbar2kappa(R)
```

Evaluating the von Mises distribution over the $0 - 360°$ interval:

```
3  a <- seq(from=0,to=360,length.out=100)
4  d <- vonMises(a,mu=md,kappa=k,degrees=TRUE)
5  plot(a,d,type='l')
6  rug(striations)
```

3. To plot azimuths and dips on a Wulff stereonet:

```
1  data(palaeomag,package='geostats')
2  stereonet(trd=palaeomag$decl,plg=palaeomag$incl,
3            option=1,degrees=TRUE,show.grid=FALSE)
```

For strikes and dips, use the `option=2` argument:

```
1  data(fault,package='geostats')
2  stereonet(trd=fault$strike,plg=fault$dip,
3            option=2,degrees=TRUE,show.grid=FALSE)
```

To plot geographical coordinates (e.g, 30° longitude and -20° latitude) on a Schmidt stereonet:

```
1  stereonet(trd=30,plg=-20,degrees=TRUE,
2            option=3,show.grid=TRUE,wulff=FALSE)
```

To add five cones of 10 degree radius to the existing plot (as in Figure 15.9.b):

```
3  stereonet(trd=c(0,0,90,180,270),plg=c(90,10,10,10,10),
4            coneAngle=rep(10,5),option=4,degrees=TRUE,add=TRUE,wulff=FALSE)
```

4. To compute the average azimuth and dip and add it to a Wulff net:

```
1  A <- palaeomag$decl
2  D <- palaeomag$incl
3  meanpalaeomag <- meanangle(trd=A,plg=D,option=1,degrees=TRUE)
4  stereonet(trd=A,plg=D,degrees=TRUE,show.grid=FALSE,pch=16,col='grey')
5  stereonet(trd=meanpalaeomag[1],plg=meanpalaeomag[2],
6            option=1,degrees=TRUE,add=TRUE,pch=16,col='black')
```

To average strike and dip measurements:

```
1  S <- fault$strike
2  D <- fault$dip
3  meanfault <- meanangle(trd=S,plg=D,option=2,degrees=TRUE)
4  stereonet(trd=S,plg=D,option=2,degrees=TRUE,
5            show.grid=FALSE,pch=16,col='grey')
6  stereonet(trd=meanfault[1],plg=meanfault[2],
7            option=2,degrees=TRUE,add=TRUE,pch=16,col='black')
```

17.16 Spatial data

geostats implements a simple version of ordinary kriging. A far more complete set of geosta-tistical functions can be found in the gstat package.

1. Load the Meuse dataset, define three shorthand variables, and plot them on a map:

```
1  data(meuse,package='geostats')
2  X <- meuse$x  # Easting
3  Y <- meuse$y  # Northing
4  Z <- log(meuse$zinc)
5  colourplot(X=X,Y=Y,Z=Z,key.title=title('ln[Zn]'))
```

2. Plot the empirical semivariogram and fit a spherical semivariogram model to it:

```
6  svm <- semivariogram(x=X,y=Y,z=Z)
```

Query the fit parameters:

```
> svm$snr
        sill         nugget          range
  0.63756843    0.03512741 892.01855323
```

To fit an exponential semivariogram model:

```
6  svm_exp <- semivariogram(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,model='exponential')
```

Other options for the model argument are 'linear', and 'gaussian'.

3. Estimating the ln[Zn]-value for the new location $\{x_\circ = 179850, y_\circ = 331650\}$:

```
> kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,svm=svm,xi=179850,yi=331650)
[1] 5.011715
```

and its variance:

```
> kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,svm=svm,xi=179850,yi=331650,err=TRUE)
[1] 0.2215261
```

4. Evaluate the ln[Zn]-values for a grid of locations and plot as a contour map:

```
7   xi <- seq(from=min(X),to=max(X),length.out=50)
8   yi <- seq(from=min(Y),to=max(Y),length.out=50)
9   zi <- kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,svm=svm,xi=xi,yi=yi,grid=TRUE)
10  colourplot(x=xi,y=yi,z=zi,key.title=title('ln[Zn]'))
```

And to visualise the uncertainties of the kriging estimates, replace the last two lines with:

```
9   zi <- kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,svm=svm,xi=xi,yi=yi,grid=TRUE,err=TRUE)
10  colourplot(x=xi,y=yi,z=sqrt(zi),key.title=title('s[Zn]/Zn'))
```

Chapter 18

Exercises

18.1 The basics

1. Plot the sine and cosine functions from 0 to 2π.

2. Write a function to plot an ellipse:

$$\begin{cases} x = a\cos(\alpha)\cos(\beta) - b\sin(\alpha)\sin(\beta) \\ y = b\sin(\alpha)\cos(\beta) + b\cos(\alpha)\sin(\beta) \end{cases} \quad \text{for } 0 < \beta < 2\pi$$

   where α is the rotation angle of the ellipse $(-\pi/2 < \alpha < \pi/2)$.

3. Write a function that takes two numbers as input and tells the user whether these are multiples of each other or not.

4. Write a function to print the following number triangle:

   1
   2 2
   3 3 3
   4 4 4 4
   5 5 5 5 5
   ⋮

   down to any value n

18.2 Plotting data

1. Using `geostats`' `countQuakes` function (section 17.1.13), plot the declustered earthquakes of magnitude 4.5 and greater from 2000 to 2016 as a bar plot, and as a histogram.

2. Generate two samples (A and B, say) of 100 random numbers between 0 and 1; calculate the ratios A/B and B/A; and create a 4×4 figure with KDEs and rug plots of A/B, B/A, $\ln(A/B)$ and $\ln(B/A)$.

3. Create a bivariate (x, y) dataset of 1000 random uniform numbers where $-1 \le x \le +1$ and $2 \le y \le 22$. Construct a 2-dimensional KDE for these data.

4. Plot the ECDFs of the x and y values of the previous exercise. What fraction of the x-values is less than 0? What fraction of the y-values is less than 7? And less than 17?

18.3   Summary statistics

1. Calculate the means and variances of the Anscombe quartet, and store them in a 2×8 matrix.

2. Generate $n = 10$ random numbers between 0 and 1. Calculate their mean. Repeat 100 times and store the mean values in a 100-element vector. Compute the mean and standard deviation of this vector. Repeat for $n = 100, 1000$ and 10000.

3. Generate 1000 random numbers between 0 and 200. Count the number of values that are less than 1. Repeat 500 times to fill a vector of counts. Compute the mean and variance of this vector.

4. Generate two samples (A and B) of 100 random numbers between 0 and 1, and calculate their logratio $\ln(A/B)$. Repeat 10 times and visualise the results as a box plot.

18.4   Probability

1. The International Geo Sample Number (IGSN) is an alphanumeric code that is used to identify geological rock specimens in the scientific literature. It consists of up to five letters to identify the owner of the sample, followed by four characters (letters or numbers) to identify the sample itself. Examples are PVERM1234 and UCL001B. How many sampes can each owner register? How many possible IGSNs are there in total?

2. 20 students are taking part in a mapping exercise. How many ways are there to divide them into 4 distinct groups of 5?

3. A thoroughly mixed conglomerate contains 30% andesite clasts, 20% basalt clasts, and 50% carbonate clasts. How many randomly selected clasts do we need to pick to be 95% certain that we have collected at least one clast of each lithology?

4. 95% of iron ore deposits are characterised by magnetic anomalies, and so are 98% of chromium deposits, and 1% of other rocks. 0.1% of all rocks contain iron ore, and 0.05% of rocks contain chromium ore. Suppose that we have found a magnetic anomaly. What is the probability that this is caused by an ore deposit?

18.5   The binomial distribution

1. In palynology, the ratio of arboreal to non-arboreal pollen is widely used as an index of landscape openness. This ratio is estimated by counting a representative number of randomly selected pollen from a soil sample. Suppose that we have counted 20 pollen and counted the number of arboreal or non-arboreal species among them. Further suppose that the true arboreal/non-arboreal pollen ratio in the soil is 4. What is probability that the arboreal/non-arboreal ratio of the 20 *counts* is 9 or greater?

2. We believe that 50% of all dinosaur fossils are female (and 50% are male). A bone bed contains 50 dinosaur fossils among which 32 are female (and 18 are male). Do we have enough evidence to prove that the proportion of males and females is different? Do our data support the notion that females are more common than males?

3. Draw 50 random numbers from a binomial distribution with $p = 0.2$ and $n = 100$. For each of these values, perform a two-sided test against the null hypothesis that $p = 0.2$. Do all the values pass the test?

4. Given $A = 12$ arboreal pollen and $N = 8$ non-arboreal pollen, compute a 95% confidence interval for the A/N-ratio of the soil.

18.6 The Poisson distribution

1. On average a magnitude ≥ 9 earthquake occurs once every 13.5 years. What is the probability that two such earthquakes will happen next year? What is the probability that none will happen in the next century?

2. The fission track method is a geochronological technique that is based on the spontaneous fission of ^{238}U in accessory minerals such as apatite. Spontaneous fission occurs with a probability of 8.46×10^{-17} per atom of ^{238}U per year. This is known as the decay constant. Suppose that a 1 million year old apatite crystal contains 1 pmol of ^{238}U $(= 6.022 \times 10^{10}$ atoms). What is the probability that it contains fewer than 50 fission tracks? What is the probability that it contains between 40 and 60 tracks?

3. The Orange River in South Africa is famous for its alluvial diamonds. In order for mining operations to be profitable, placer deposits must contain at least 2 diamonds per tonne. A diamond mining company has sieved 10 tonnes of sand and found 12 diamonds. Assuming that the diamonds are randomly distributed in the sand, should the company cease operations? Or would it be premature to do so and should they acquire some more data first?

4. At another site, a preliminary mining survey has yielded 30 diamonds in 10 tonnes. Construct a 95% confidence interval for the diamond yield in this deposit.

18.7 The normal distribution

1. Generate 100 random numbers from a Poisson distribution with $\lambda = 1.2$ and take their sum. Repeat this 200 times and plot the results as a histogram. Calculate the mean and the standard deviation of this synthetic dataset. What percentage of the values falls within two standard deviations from the mean?

2. IQ scores follow a normal distribution with a mean of 100 and a standard deviation of 15. Suppose that a randomly selected pair of people takes part in a blind date. What is the chance that the blind date matches a person with an IQ of more than 120 with a person whose IQ is less than 90?

3. The height of American males approximately follows a normal distribution with a mean of 69.3 inches and a standard deviation of 2.8 inches. The height of American females follows a normal distribution with a mean of 64 inches and a standard deviation of 2.8 inches. What percentage of the American population is more than 6 foot (=72 inches) tall? What percentage of American women are taller than 90 percent of American men?

4. Consider two bivariate normal distributions with mean vectors μ_X and μ_Y, and covariance matrices Σ_X and Σ_Y, respectively:

$$\mu_X = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \Sigma_X = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mu_Y = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } \Sigma_Y = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

Which outcome is most likely?

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } Y = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}?$$

18.8 Error propagation

In the following questions, the uncertainties are assumed to be independent (i.e. covariances are zero).

1. The height difference between Ordnance Survey benchmark A and a second point B is 25 ± 0.25 m, and the height difference between B and a third point C is 50 ± 0.5 m. Calculate the height difference between A and C and propagate its uncertainty.

2. Consider the following two rock specimens:

specimen	mass (g)	σ(mass)	volume (cm^3)	σ(volume)
A	105	2	36	0.15
B	30	2.5	10	0.4

   (a) Compute the densities of rocks A and B.
   (b) Propagate their respective uncertainties.
   (c) Construct approximate 95% confidence intervals for the two densities.
   (d) Is there a significant difference in density between samples A and B?

3. Sand may contain a variety of minerals with different densities. For example, zircon has a density of 4.85 ± 0.10 g/cm^3 (1σ), whereas quartz has a density of 2.65 ± 0.05 g/cm^3 (1σ). The settling velocity of sand grains in water depends on two factors: density and grain size. Dense grains settle more quickly than light ones, and large grains settle more quickly than small ones. When a balance is reached between these two factors, small zircons settle at the same rate as large quartz grains. This results in a *size shift* (SS) between zircon and quartz in beach and river sands:

$$SS = \frac{1}{0.69} \ln \left(\frac{\rho_z - 1}{\rho_q - 1} \right)$$

where ρ_z is the density of zircon, ρ_q is the density of quartz, and $SS \equiv \log_2(D_z/D_q)$ where D_z = diameter of zircon grains and D_q = diameter of quartz grains). Calculate SS and propagate its uncertainty.

4. We measured the following ^{40}K and ^{40}Ar concentrations:

^{40}K ($\times 10^{-10}$ mol/g)	2,093	2,105	2,055	2,099	2,030	
^{40}Ar ($\times 10^{-10}$ mol/g)	6.015	6.010	6.030	6.005	6.020	6.018

   (a) Calculate the mean ^{40}K and ^{40}Ar concentrations.
   (b) Calculate the standard error of these means.
   (c) Estimate the ^{40}Ar/^{40}K-ratio and its standard error.
   (d) The age equation for the ^{40}K-^{40}Ar method is as follows:

$$t = \frac{1}{\lambda} \ln \left[1 + \frac{\lambda}{\lambda_e} \left(\frac{^{40}Ar}{^{40}K} \right) \right]$$

   with $\lambda = 5.543 \times 10^{-4}$ Myr^{-1} and $\lambda/\lambda_e = 9.3284$. Calculate the age and its standard error.

18.9   Comparing distributions

1. `geostats` contains a dataset with foraminifera counts for two surface sediments (A and B) from the Atlantic Ocean:

```
> data(forams,package='geostats')
> forams
  uvula scitula quinqueloba pachyderma incompta glutinata bulloides
A     9       1          13         15       16        10       10
B    20      15          35         30       40        20       18
```

Is there sufficient evidence that the two samples represent different ecosystems, i.e. that the proportions of the different species in both samples is significantly different?

2. Compute a 95% confidence interval for the mean of the `pH` dataset.

3. Compare the following two samples, first with a t-test, then with a Wilcoxon test:

$$
\begin{array}{c|ccccccc}
A & 0 & 2 & 4 & 6 & 8 \\
B & 3 & 5 & 7 & 9 & 11 & 13 & 15
\end{array}
$$

Which of the two tests is more powerful?

4. The `DZ` dataset in the `geostats` package contains a list of 15 detrital zircon U–Pb age distributions. Calculate the Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistic for all possible pairs of samples. Which two samples are the most similar? Which are the least similar? Show the resulting two pairs as two Q-Q plots.

18.10   Regression

1. `trees` is one of R's built-in datasets. Have a look at it by typing `plot(trees)` at the command prompt. Now calculate the correlation coefficients of all possible combinations of variables. Which variables have the strongest correlation? Determine the corresponding slope and intercept.

2. `geostats` contains a dataset called `worldpop`, which tallies the world's population from 1750 until 2014. From 1960 onwards, the world population has been growing at a linear rate. Fit a straight line through these values and extrapolate it to today. Then compare your prediction with the value reported on https://www.worldometers.info.

3. Let x, y and z be three independent normally distributed sets of $n = 100$ measurements with coefficients of variation $\sigma_x/\mu_x = 0.05$, $\sigma_y/\mu_y = 0.01$ and $\sigma_z/\mu_z = 0.1$, respectively. Form two new variables by taking the ratios $X = x/z$ and $Y = y/z$. What is the expected null correlation for X and Y? Compare with the actual value.

4. Consider the following three samples:

i	x	$s[x]$	y	$s[y]$	$cov[x_i, y_i]$
1	10	1	20	1	0.9
2	20	1	30	1	0.9
3	28	1	42	1	-0.9

Fit a straight line through the (x_i, y_i)-data, first ignoring the uncertainties ($s[x_i]$, $s[y_i]$, $cov[x_i, y_i]$), and then using error weighted regression.

18.11   Fractals and chaos

1. Plot the size-frequency distribution of North American rivers using `R`'s built-in `rivers` dataset.

2. Use the `boxcount` function in `geostats` to count how many 4×4 boxes are needed to cover all the fractures in `geostats`' `fractures` dataset. How many 8×8 boxes are needed? Compute the fractal dimension of the fracture pattern.

3. Using the last 50 years of the `geostats`' `declustered` dataset, estimate the chance of observing at least one magnitude ≥ 6 earthquake in the western United States next year. Hint: use a combination of fractal and Poisson distributions.

4. Use `geostats`' `pendulum` function to repeat the pendulum experiment of Section 11.4. Try different initial positions, velocities, numbers of magnets etc. See `?pendulum` for details.

18.12   Unsupervised learning

1. Visualise `R`'s built-in `iris` dataset as a PCA biplot and interpret the results. Hint: remove the `Species` column from the `iris` data to get a matrix of four-dimensional data (Section 17.12.5).

2. Analyse the same `iris` data by MDS. Check if the results are consistent with the output of the previous exercise.

3. The `kmeans` function of Section 17.12.5 returns a 9-element list. This list includes an item called `withinss`, which contains the sum of squared distances of all the items in each cluster to their respective centres, and another item called `tot.withinss`, which contains the sum of the `withinss` values. Plot the value of `tot.withinss` against the number of clusters (k) for the `iris` dataset, for $1 \leq k \leq 10$. The 'elbow' in this curve marks the optimal number of clusters.

4. Use the `ksdist` function of the `geostats` package to create a distance matrix of Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistics for the `DZ` dataset. Then use the output of this function to build a hierarchical clustering tree for those detrital zircon U–Pb ages. Are the results consistent with the MDS configuration of Figure 12.9?

18.13   Supervised learning

1. The `geostats` package includes a dataset called `training`, which contains the SiO_2, TiO_2, Al_2O_3, CaO, MgO, MnO, K_2O and Na_2O concentrations (in wt%) of 227 island arc basalts (IAB), 221 mid oceanic ridge basalts (MORB), and 198 ocean island basalts (OIB). Build an LDA model for the data. What is the misclassification rate of the data?

2. The `geostats` package also contains a second dataset of IAB, MORB and OIB compositions called `test`. Classify these data using the LDA model obtained under question 1. What is the misclassification rate? Compare this to the misclassification rate of the `training` data.

3. Build a decision tree for the `training` data. What is the misclassification rate of the optimal tree?

4. Analyse the `test` data with the decision tree of question 3. How does its misclassification rate compare to that of the `training` data? And to the LDA analysis of questions 1 and 2?

18.14 Compositional data

1. `mtcars` is one of `R`'s built-in datasets. It contains a table with the fuel consumption and 10 aspects of automobile design and performance for 32 automobiles features in a 1974 edition of 'Motor Trend' magazine.

   (a) Calculate the average fuel consumption of these 32 vehicles –which are listed in miles per gallon– using the arithmetic mean.

   (b) Convert the data to European units, namely litres per 100km. x miles/gallon $= y$ litres/100km, where:
   $$y = \frac{235.21}{x}$$

   (c) Calculate the arithmetic mean fuel consumption in litres/100km.

   (d) Convert the arithmetic mean number of mpg (from step 1a) to units of litres/100km. How does the resulting value compare with that obtained from step 1c?

   (e) Compute the geometric mean fuel consumption in mpg and litres/100km. Then convert the units of these mean values and compare with the result observed under step 1d.

2. Load `geostats`' `test` data into memory and plot the CaO–K$_2$O–Na$_2$O **subcomposition** on a ternary diagram. Add the arithmetic and logratio mean compositions to the plot. Experiment with the arguments to the `ternary` function to make the plot look as clear as possible.

3. Perform compositional PCA on the `test` data and interpret the results on a biplot. Use the optional `col` argument of the `biplot` function to enhance the figure.

4. Repeat the LDA exercise of Sections 18.13.1 and 2, but using a logratio transformation. How does the transformation affect the misclassification rates?

18.15 Directional data

1. Consider the following two sets of compass bearings:

A	50	55	40	60	45
B	350	10	5	358	

   What is the difference of the vector means for A and B?

2. The `earthquakes` dataset in the `geostats` package contains two columns with the longitude and latitude of 20,000 earthquakes. Extract the events that took place between longitudes $-90°$W and $+90°$E and plot them on a Schmidt stereonet.

3. Consider the following two sets of fault measurements:

	1$^{\text{th}}$ fault				2$^{\text{nd}}$ fault				
strike	200	195	210	205	20	25	18	17	16
dip	70	68	71	67	10	12	9	14	11

   Plot the two sets of faults on a Wulff net and calculate the difference of their mean strike and dip.

4. Which of `geostats`' built-in datasets is more tightly clustered: `palaeomag` or `fault`?

18.16   Spatial data

1. The `geostats` package contains a dataset called `hills`, which tabulates 250 topographic measurements for a synthetic landscape comprised of three bivariate normal 'hills'. Fit an exponential, linear, Gaussian and spherical model to the semivariogram. Subjectively assess which model fits the empirical semivariogram best.

2. Using the semivariogram model obtained under question 1, estimate the elevation at position $\{x = 0, y = 0\}$, and its standard error.

3. Create a contour plot of the `hills` dataset.

4. Using the Meuse data, create a contour map of the difference between kriging models using a spherical and exponential semivariogram model.

Chapter 19

Solutions

In programming there nearly always exist multiple ways to solve a problem. Your code does not have to be exactly the same as the solutions given in this chapter. Occasionally some of these solutions include `R` functions and optional arguments that have not already been introduced before. These additional 'bells and whistles' are optional, and the code will still work without them. Several exercises depend on the `geostats` package, which we assume to have been loaded into memory:

```
library(geostats)
```

19.1   The basics

1. Plotting the sine:

```
1  theta <- seq(from=0,to=2*pi,length.out=50)
2  plot(theta,sin(theta),type='l')
```

Adding the cosine:

```
3  lines(theta,cos(theta),lty=2)
```

where `lty=2` creates a dashed line (see `?par`).

2. Define the function

```
1  ellipse <- function(a=1,b=1,alpha=pi/4){
2    beta <- seq(from=0,to=2*pi,length.out=50)
3    x <- a*cos(alpha)*cos(beta) - b*sin(alpha)*sin(beta)
4    y <- a*sin(alpha)*cos(beta) + b*cos(alpha)*sin(beta)
5    plot(x,y,type='l',asp=1)
6  }
```

Using the new function:

```
> ellipse() # produces a circle
> ellipse(a=1,b=2)
```

3. Here we need a conditional statement:

```
multiples <- function(n,m){
  remainder <- max(n,m) %% min(n,m)
  if (remainder == 0){
    decision <- paste(n,'and',m,'are multiples')
  } else {
    decision <- paste(n,'and',m,'are not multiples')
  }
  print(decision)
}
```

where the `paste` function concatenates text strings (see `?paste` for details).

4. This exercise requires a for-loop:

```
triangle <- function(n){
  for (i in 1:n){
    print(rep(i,i))
  }
}
```

19.2   Plotting data

1. The bars produced by `barplot` correspond to years, whereas those produced by `hist` correspond to the number of earthquakes per year. The following code shows both diagrams side by side:

```
data(declustered,package='geostats')
quakesperyear <- countQuakes(declustered,minmag=4.5,from=2000,to=2016)
par(mfrow=c(1,2))
barplot(quakesperyear)
hist(quakesperyear)
```

2. Write a plotting function to avoid duplicate code:

```
rugdensity <- function(dat){
  plot(density(dat))
  rug(dat)
}
```

Then we can use this function to show that the (reciprocal) ratios of random numbers drawn from a symmetric (e.g. uniform) distribution follow a skewed distribution:

```
A <- runif(100)
B <- runif(100)
par(mfrow=c(2,2))
rugdensity(A/B)
```

```
9   rugdensity(B/A)
10  rugdensity(log(A/B))
11  rugdensity(log(B/A))
```

3. Using the optional `min` and `max` arguments of the `runif(...)` function:

```
1  library(MASS)
2  x <- runif(1000,min=-1,max=1)
3  y <- runif(1000,min=2,max=22)
4  contour(kde2d(x,y))
5  points(x,y)
```

4. Continuing the previous solution:

```
6   par(mfrow=c(1,2))
7   cdfx <- ecdf(x)
8   plot(cdfx)
9   cdfy <- ecdf(y)
10  plot(cdfy)
```

Querying the ECDFs:

```
> cdfx(0)
[1] 0.492
> cdfy(c(7,17))
[1] 0.248 0.748
```

You may get slightly different values due to the randomness of the `runif(...)` function. But they should hover around $\sim 0.5, \sim 0.25$ and ~ 0.75, respectively.

19.3   Summary statistics

1. Carrying on from Section 17.2.1, and using a for-loop to avoid duplicate code:

```
1  nc <- ncol(anscombe)                  # number of columns
2  mv <- matrix(0,nrow=2,ncol=nc)        # mv = 'mean-variance'
3  rownames(mv) <- c('mean','variance')
4  colnames(mv) <- colnames(anscombe)
5  for (i in 1:nc){                      # loop through the columns
6    mv['mean',i] <- mean(anscombe[,i])
7    mv['variance',i] <- var(anscombe[,i])
8  }
```

Querying the result and rounding to two significant digits:

```
> signif(mv,2)
         x1 x2 x3 x4  y1  y2  y3  y4
mean      9  9  9  9 7.5 7.5 7.5 7.5
variance 11 11 11 11 4.1 4.1 4.1 4.1
```

2. First define a function to generate n random numbers and average them:

```
1  meanofmeans <- function(n=10,N=100){
2    m <- rep(0,N)              # initialise
3    for (i in 1:N){
4      m[i] <- mean(runif(n)) # populate
5    }
6    c(mean(m),sd(m))          # return the results
7  }
```

An equivalent but faster solution would be to replace the for-loop with:

```
3    R <- runif(n*N)
4    M <- matrix(R,nrow=n,ncol=N)
5    m <- colMeans(M)
```

Now apply the `meanofmeans` function to $n = 10, 100, 1000$ and 10000, and store the results in a matrix:

```
8  n <- c(10,100,1000,10000)       # Initialise
9  mom <- matrix(0,length(n),2)    # the
10 colnames(mom) <- c('mean','sd') # results
11 rownames(mom) <- n              # matrix.
12 for (i in 1:length(n)){         # Fill
13   mom[i,] <- meanofmeans(n[i])  # the
14 }                               # matrix.
```

Check the result at the command prompt and verify that the mean converges to 0.5, and the standard deviation gets ever smaller with increasing n:

```
> signif(mom,4)
         mean       sd
10     0.4977 0.092320
100    0.5033 0.025540
1000   0.5003 0.009316
10000  0.5002 0.002923
```

Again, results may vary slightly between runs. The sample size dependency of the mean of means is further investigated in Chapter 8.3.

3. Filling the vector of 500 counts using a for-loop:

```
1  N <- 500
2  counts <- rep(0,N)
3  for (i in 1:N){
4    r <- runif(1000,max=200)
5    counts[i] <- sum(r < 1)
6  }
```

Alternatively, we can also solve the problem more quickly without a for-loop:

```
1  n <- 1000
2  N <- 500
3  r <- runif(n*N,max=200)
4  m <- matrix(r,nrow=n,ncol=N)
5  counts <- colSums(m<1)
```

You should see that the mean approximately equals the variance:

```
> mean(counts)
[1] 4.928
> var(counts)
[1] 5.01685
```

This phenomenon is further explored in Chapter 6.

4. Taking the logratio of two matrices of random numbers:

```
1  n <- 100
2  N <- 10
3  A <- matrix(runif(n*N),nrow=n,ncol=N)
4  B <- matrix(runif(n*N),nrow=n,ncol=N)
5  boxplot(log(A/B))
```

You should get ten broadly similar looking box plots.

19.4   Probability

1. An IGSN consists of two parts. The first part consists of up to five letters. There 26 possible one-letter combinations, 26^2 possible two-letter combinations etc. Therefore, the total number of lab identifiers is $\sum_{i=1}^{5} 26^i = 12,356,630$. The second part consists of four letters (A–Z) or numbers (0–9). The total number of possibilities for these is $36^4 = 1,679,616$. Therefore, the total number of possible IGSNs is

```
> sum(26^{1:5}) * 36^4
[1] 2.075439e+13
```

2. There are $\binom{20}{5}$ choices for the first group, $\binom{15}{5}$ for the second, $\binom{10}{5}$ for the third and $\binom{5}{5}$ for the fourth. However this includes 4! duplicate groupings, because there are 4! was to shuffle the four groups. Hence the total number of combinations is:

```
> i <- seq(from=5,to=20,by=5)
> prod(choose(i,5))/factorial(4)
[1] 488864376
```

3. Let A, B and C stand for for andesite, basalt and carbonate, respectively, and let p_A, p_B and p_C be their respective probabilities in the population (i.e. $p_A = 0.3$, $p_B = 0.2$ and $p_C = 0.5$). The probability that none of n clasts are made of andesite is $(1 - p_A)^n$. So we might think that the probability of missing at least one clast type is:

$$p(\text{no } A, B \text{ or } C) \stackrel{?}{=} (1 - p_A)^n + (1 - p_B)^n + (1 - p_C)^n$$

However this would double-count the instances where two clast types are missing. For example, if a sample of n clasts does not contain any basalt or carbonate, then this means that it contains only andesite. The probability that this happens is p_A^n. Similarly, the probabilility of missing both andesite and carbonate is p_B^n, and the probability of missing both andesite and basalt is p_C^n. Removing these double-counted events:

$$p(\text{no } A, B \text{ or } C) = (1 - p_A)^n + (1 - p_B)^n + (1 - p_C)^n - p_A^n - p_B^n - p_C^n$$

Implementing this expression in `R`:

```
1   ABC <- function(n,pA,pB,pC){
2     if (n<3){    # samples of fewer than 3 clasts
3       p <- 0     # are definitely incomplete
4     } else {
5       p <- (1-pA)^n + (1-pB)^n + (1-pC)^n - pA^n - pB^n - pC^n
6     }
7     return(1-p)
8   }
```

Evaluating the `ABC` function at the command line for different values of n:

```
> ABC(n=10,pA=0.3,pB=0.2,pC=0.5)
[1] 0.8634136
> ABC(n=20,pA=0.3,pB=0.2,pC=0.5)
[1] 0.9876719
> ABC(n=14,pA=0.3,pB=0.2,pC=0.5)
[1] 0.9491764
```

In conclusion we need to collect at least 14 clasts to have 95% certainty that all lithologies are represented in our sample.

4. Using Equation 4.11:

$$p(\text{Fe}|\text{anomaly}) = \frac{p(\text{anomaly}|\text{Fe})p(\text{Fe})}{p(\text{anomaly}|\text{Fe})p(\text{Fe}) + p(\text{anomaly}|\text{Cr})p(\text{Cr}) + p(\text{anomaly}|\text{other})p(\text{other})}$$

$$= \frac{0.95 \times 0.001}{(0.95 \times 0.001) + (0.98 \times 0.0005) + (0.01 \times 0.9985)} = 0.083 = 8.3\%$$

$$p(\text{Cr}|\text{anomaly}) = \frac{p(\text{anomaly}|\text{Cr})p(\text{Cr})}{p(\text{anomaly}|\text{Fe})p(\text{Fe}) + p(\text{anomaly}|\text{Cr})p(\text{Cr}) + p(\text{anomaly}|\text{other})p(\text{other})}$$

$$= \frac{0.98 \times 0.0005}{(0.95 \times 0.001) + (0.98 \times 0.0005) + (0.01 \times 0.9985)} = 0.043 = 4.3\%$$

Hence the probability that the magnetic anomaly is caused by an ore deposit is $8.3 + 4.3 = 12.6\%$.

19.5 The binomial distribution

1. Let $p(A)$ and $p(N)$ be the probability of counting an arboreal and non-arboreal pollen, respectively (where $p(A) + p(N) = 1$). Then:

$$\frac{p(A)}{p(N)} = 4 = \frac{p(A)}{1 - p(A)} \Rightarrow p(A) = \frac{4}{1 + 4} = 0.8$$

So if $n = 20$, then the most likely outcome is $20 \times 0.8 = 16$ arboreal and $20 \times (1 - 0.8) = 4$ non-arboreal pollen. Using the same calculation, an arboreal/non-arboreal count ratio of 9 would correspond to a probability $p(A) = 9/10 = 0.9$, which would lead to an outcome of $20 \times 0.9 = 18$ arboreal and $20 \times (1 - 0.9) = 2$ non-arboreal pollen. The probability of observing an outcome at least as extreme as this is given by:

```
> 1-pbinom(q=17,size=20,prob=0.8)
[1] 0.2060847
```

or, equivalently:

```
> pbinom(q=17,size=20,prob=0.2,lower.tail=FALSE)
> pbinom(q=2,size=20,prob=0.2)
```

In conclusion, there is a 20% chance of observing an A/N count ratio of greater or equal than 9 when the actual population ratio is 4.

2. To answer the first question, we formulate a two-sided hypothesis:

$H_\circ : p(\text{female}) = p(\text{male})$
$H_a : p(\text{female}) \neq p(\text{male})$

Then the 2.5 and 97.5 percentiles of the binomial null distribution are given by:

```
> qbinom(p=c(0.025,0.975),size=50,prob=0.5)
[1] 18 32
```

So the rejection is $R = \{0, \ldots, 17, 33, \ldots, 50\}$, which does not include the observed outcome of 32 male fossils. Equivalently, using the `binom.test` function:

```
> h <- binom.test(x=32,n=50,p=0.5,alternative="two.sided")
> h$p.value
[1] 0.06490865
```

$0.06490865 > 0.05$ and therefore the two-sided hypothesis is not rejected. To answer the second question, we carry out a one-sided hypothesis test:

$H_\circ : p(\text{female}) = p(\text{male})$
$H_a : p(\text{female}) > p(\text{male})$

whose 95 percentile is given by:

```
> qbinom(p=0.95,size=50,prob=0.5)
[1] 31
```

This leads to a rejection region of $R = \{32, \ldots, 50\}$, which includes the outcome of 32 female fossils. Hence the one sided hypothesis is rejected. Equivalently:

```
> h <- binom.test(x=32,n=50,p=0.5,alternative="greater")
> h$p.value
[1] 0.03245432
```

which is half of the one-sided p-value and less than 0.05. The one-sided hypothesis is more powerful than the two-sided version, leading to rejection of $H_\circ$. Thus the one-sided and two-sided hypothesis tests lead to different conclusions for the same dataset. It is important that the test is chosen before the experiment is completed. So you must decide on your scientific question before designing your study. In the dinosaur example, it would be bad practice to decide on a one-sided hypothesis test *after* seeing that female fossils are more abundant in the bone bed than male ones.

3. This exercise is all about type-I errors. Using `rbinom` to generate the synthetic data:

```
1  type1test <- function(p=0.2,n=50,N=100){
2    r <- rbinom(n=n,size=N,prob=p)
3    pval <- rep(0,n)
4    for (i in 1:n){
5      h <- binom.test(x=r[i],n=N,p=p)
6      pval[i] <- h$p.value
7    }
8    sum(pval<0.05)
9  }
```

The function is to be used like this:

```
> type1test()
[1] 2
> type1test()
[1] 3
```

```
> type1test()
[1] 0
```

You get a different result every time because `rbinom` generates a different set of numbers every time. The number of rejected null hypotheses should hover around 5%. Therefore we would expect that, on average, 2.5 out of every 50 tests should fail.

4. The 95% confidence interval for $p(A)$ is given by:

```
> binom.test(x=12,n=20)$conf.int
[1] 0.3605426 0.8088099
```

Note that we are not really using `binom.test` to carry out a hypothesis test. We are only interested in the confidence interval. The lower value of the confidence interval for $p(A) = 0.3605426$ corresponds to an A/N-ratio of

$$\frac{p(A)}{p(N)} = \frac{p(A)}{1 - p(A)} = \frac{0.3605426}{1 - 0.3605426} = 0.5638258$$

A value of $p(A) = 0.8088099$ corresponds to an A/N-ratio of

$$\frac{p(A)}{p(N)} = \frac{p(A)}{1 - p(A)} = \frac{0.8088099}{1 - 0.8088099} = 4.230396$$

Hence the 95% confidence interval for A/N is $(0.5638258, 4.230396)$.

19.6 The Poisson distribution

1. If, on average, one magnitude ≥ 9 event happens every 13.5 years, then this means that $\lambda = 1/13.5$. The chance that exactly two such events happen per year is given by Equation 6.1:

$$P\left(k = 2 | \lambda = \frac{1}{13.5}\right) = \frac{\lambda^k e^{-\lambda}}{k!} = \frac{\exp\left[-\frac{1}{13.5}\right]}{13.5^2 2!} = 0.00255 \ (0.255\%)$$

In `R`:

```
> dpois(x=2,lambda=1/13.5)
[1] 0.002547607
```

The average number of magnitude ≥ 9 earthquakes per century is $\lambda = 100/13.5$. The chance that no such earthquake will happen during the next century is:

$$P\left(k = 0 | \lambda = \frac{100}{13.5}\right) = \exp\left[-\frac{100}{13.5}\right] = 0.000607(0.0607\%)$$

2. The expected number of fission tracks is

$$(1 \times 10^6 \text{yr}) \times \left(\frac{8.46 \times 10^{-17}}{\text{atoms} \cdot \text{yr}}\right) \times (6.022 \times 10^{10} \text{atoms}) = 50.95$$

The probability that the crystal contains fewer than 50 fission tracks is:

```
> L <- 1e6 * 8.46e-17 * 6.022e11
> ppois(q=50,lambda=L)
[1] 0.4843836
```

The probability that it contains between 40 and 60 fission tracks is:

```
> ppois(q=60,lambda=L) - ppois(q=40,lambda=L)
[1] 0.8393979
```

3. This problem requires a one-sided hypothesis test:

   $H_\circ : \lambda = 2$
   $H_a : \lambda < 2$

   In R:

```
> h <- poisson.test(x=12,T=10,r=2,alternative='less')
> h$p.value
[1] 0.03901199
```

   $H_\circ$ is rejected on a 95% confidence level, and so it would be best to cease operations and abandon the mining site.

4. To construct a 95% confidence interval, we again use poisson.test, but have no need to formulate a null hypothesis. This is similar to exercise 19.5.4:

```
> h <- poisson.test(x=30,T=10)
> h$conf.int
[1] 2.024087 4.282687
```

   The profitability cutoff of 2 diamonds per tonne falls below this confidence interval. So we can conclude that the second site is profitable.

19.7 The normal distribution

1. This is an illustration of the central limit theorem. Here is a solution that does not require a for loop:

```
1  # np = the number of Poisson values per sum
2  # ns = the number of sums
3  CLT <- function(np=100,ns=200){
4    r <- rpois(n=np*ns,lambda=1.2)   # create all random numbers at once
5    mat <- matrix(r,nrow=np,ncol=ns) # put the values in one big matrix
6    sums <- colSums(mat)  # take the column sums (instead of a for loop)
7    hist(sums)            # plot the histogram
8    mu <- mean(sums)      # compute the mean
9    sigma <- sd(sums)     # compute the standard deviation
```

```
10    proximal <- sums>(mu-2*sigma) & sums<(mu+2*sigma) # logical vector
11    return(sum(proximal)/ns)          # returns a value between 0 and 1
12 }
```

Running this script from the console should return a value of approximately 0.95:

```
> CLT()
[1] 0.955
```

Results will vary slightly due to the randomness of rpois.

2. The probability that someone has an IQ of less than 90 is

```
> pnorm(q=90,mean=100,sd=15)
[1] 0.2524925
```

The probability that someone has an IQ of more than 120 is

```
> pnorm(q=120,mean=100,sd=15,lower.tail=FALSE)
[1] 0.09121122
```

The probability that two such people are paired up is the product of these two values, which is 2.3%.

3. The probability that the height of an American male exceeds 72 inches is

```
> pnorm(q=72,mean=69.3,sd=2.8,lower.tail=FALSE)
[1] 0.1674514
```

The probability that an American female is more than 72 inches tall is

```
> pnorm(q=72,mean=64,sd=2.8,lower.tail=FALSE)
[1] 0.002137367
```

The sum of these two values is 17.0%. The 90 percentile for men is

```
> p90 <- qnorm(p=0.9,mean=69.3,sd=2.8)
> p90
[1] 72.88834
```

The fraction of women who exceed this height is

```
> pnorm(q=p90,mean=64,sd=2.8,lower.tail=FALSE)
[1] 0.0007507106
```

which is 0.075%.

4. Here we need to evaluate the bivariate normal likelihood (equation 7.7). Unfortunately, this function is not part of base R so we need to implement it ourselves:

```
1   dmvnorm <- function(vec,mu=rep(0,2),sigma=diag(2)){
2     num <- exp(0.5 * t(vec - mu) %*% solve(sigma) %*% (vec - mu))
3     den <- 2*pi*sqrt(det(sigma))
4     return(num/den)
5   }
```

Using these data to evaluate the bivariate normal densities of X and Y:

```
6   muX <- c(1,2)
7   muY <- c(3,4)
8   SigmaX <- matrix(c(1,-1,-1,3),nrow=2,ncol=2)
9   SigmaY <- matrix(c(2,2,2,7),nrow=2,ncol=2)
10  X <- c(2,1)
11  Y <- c(5,7)
12  dX <- dmvnorm(X,mu=muX,sigma=SigmaX)
13  dY <- dmvnorm(Y,mu=muY,sigma=SigmaY)
```

which produces the following output:

```
> dX
[1,] 0.1855463
> dY
[1,] 0.1511973
```

So outcome X is more likely than outcome Y.

19.8   Error propagation

1. Let x be the height difference between points A and B ($x = 25 \pm 0.25$ m), and let y be the height difference between B and C ($y = 50 \pm 0.5$ m). Then the height difference between A and C is simply $z = x + y = 75$ m. To propagate the uncertainty of this estimate, we use Equation 8.10 with $a = 0$ and $b = c = 1$:

$$s[z]^2 = s[x]^2 + s[y]^2 = 0.25^2 + 0.5^2 = 0.3125 \Rightarrow s[z] = \sqrt{0.3125} = 0.559017$$

Note that the uncertainty of both x and y is 1%, but the uncertainty of z is only 0.75%.

2. (a) Density is mass divided by volume, hence density$(A) = 105/36 = 2.92$ g/cm^3 and density$(B) = 30/10 = 3.00$ g/cm^3.

   (b) The uncertainty is calculated with the formula for a quotient (equation 8.13):

$$\left(\frac{s[z]}{z}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{s[x]}{x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{s[y]}{y}\right)^2$$

where z is density, x is mass and y is volume. Thus $s[\text{density}(A)] = \frac{105}{36}\sqrt{\left(\frac{2}{105}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{0.15}{36}\right)^2} = 0.057$ g/cm^3 and $s[\text{density}(B)] = \frac{30}{10}\sqrt{\left(\frac{2.5}{30}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{0.4}{10}\right)^2} = 0.277$ g/cm^3.

(c) The 95% confidence intervals for the two densities are approximately $2\times$ their standard deviations. So for sample A, the 95% confidence interval is 2.92 ± 0.11 g/cm^3, and for sample B it is 3.00 ± 0.55 g/cm^3.

(d) The confidence interval for density(A) overlaps with density(B) and vice versa. Therefore, we cannot rule out the possibility that the true densities are equal.

3. The formula for the size shift does not directly fit into any of the equations of Section 8.2. Therefore we have to apply the chain rule:

$$x = \rho_z - 1 = 3.85 \text{ and } y = \rho_q - 1 = 1.65$$
$$z = \frac{x}{y} = \frac{3.85}{1.65} = 2.333$$
$$SS = a\ln(z) = \frac{1}{0.69}\ln(2.33) = 1.228$$

Following the same steps for the error propagation:

$$s[x] = s[\rho_z] = 0.10 \text{ and } s[y] = s[\rho_q] = 0.05 \text{ (using Equation 8.11)}$$
$$s[z] = z\sqrt{\left(\frac{s[x]}{x}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{s[y]}{y}\right)^2} = \frac{3.85}{1.65}\sqrt{\left(\frac{0.10}{3.85}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{0.05}{1.65}\right)^2} = 0.093 \text{ (using Equation 8.13)}$$
$$s[SS] = a\frac{s[z]}{z} = \frac{1}{0.69}\frac{0.093}{2.333} = 0.058 \text{ (using Equation 8.15)}$$

Hence the size shift is $SS = 1.228 \pm 0.058$, which can be used to select a set of sieves that separate zircon from quartz.

4. (a) Calculating the means:

```
1  K40 <- c(2093,2105,2055,2099,2030)
2  Ar40 <- c(6.015,6.010,6.030,6.005,6.020,6.018)
3  meanK40 <- mean(K40)
4  meanAr40 <- mean(Ar40)
```

(b) The standard errors of the means:

```
5  nK40 <- length(K40)
6  nAr40 <- length(Ar40)
7  seK40 <- sd(K40)/sqrt(nK40)
8  seAr40 <- sd(Ar40)/sqrt(nAr40)
```

(c) The ^{40}Ar/^{40}K-ratio and its standard error, propagated using Equation 8.13:

```
9   Ar40K40 <- meanAr40/meanK40
10  seAr40K40 <- Ar40K40*sqrt((seAr40/meanAr40)^2+(seK40/meanK40)^2)
```

(d) Calculating the K–Ar age:

```
11  L <- 5.543e-4 # lambda
12  LLe <- 9.3284 # lambda/lambda_e
13  age <- log(1+LLe*Ar40K40)/L
```

Propagating its uncertainty requires breaking down the calculation into two steps:

$$z = 1 + \frac{\lambda}{\lambda_e} \left(\frac{^{40}Ar}{^{40}K} \right) \text{ (which can be propagated using Equation 8.10)}$$

$$\text{and } t = \frac{1}{\lambda} \ln(z) \text{ (which can be propagated using Equation 8.15)}$$

In `R`:

```
14  z <- 1+LLe*Ar40K40
15  sez <- LLe*seAr40K40 # using equation 8.10
16  se_age <- sez/(L*z)  # using equation 8.15
```

Running this script in `R` yields

```
> age
[1] 48.11483
> se_age
[1] 0.3331236
```

19.9 Comparing distributions

1. This is an application of `R`'s `chisq.test` function. First we amalgamate the data columns with the fewest counts. Then we apply a two-sample chi-square test to this new table:

```
1  data(forams,package='geostats')
2  abundant <- forams[,c('quinqueloba','pachyderma','incompta',
3                        'glutinata','bulloides')]
4  other <- rowSums(forams[,c('uvula','scitula')])
5  dat <- cbind(abundant,other)
6  h <- chisq.test(dat)
```

Probing the outcome of these calculations:

```
> h$p.value
[1] 0.7977184
```

Hence there is insufficient evidence to prove that the two samples reflect different ecosystems.

2. Using Equation 9.6:

```
1  data(pH,package='geostats')       # load the data
2  n <- length(pH)                   # sample size
3  mu <- mean(pH)                    # arithmetic mean
4  se <- sd(pH)/sqrt(n)              # standard error of the mean
5  tfact <- qt(p=0.025,df=n-1)       # t(df,alpha/2)
6  ci <- mu + c(tfact*se,-tfact*se) # confidence interval
```

which produces

```
> ci
[1] 4.671497 5.298503
```

3. Comparing the t-test and Wilcoxon test:

```
1  A <- seq(from=0,to=8,by=2)
2  B <- seq(from=3,to=15,by=2)
3  ht <- t.test(A,B)
4  hw <- wilcox.test(A,B)
```

which produces the following outcomes:

```
> ht$p.value
[1] 0.04325446
> hw$p.value
[1] 0.07323232
```

The null hypothesis is rejected by the t-test but not by the Wilcoxon test. This is representative of a general tendency for non-parametric hypothesis tests to be less powerful than their parametric counterparts.

4. There are 13 samples in the DZ, whose Kolmogorov-Smirnov statistics can be evaluated in a double for loop.

```
1   data(DZ,package='geostats') # load the data
2   ns <- length(DZ)             # number of samples
3   maxKS <- 0                   # initialise the least similar K-S value
4   minKS <- 1                   # initialise the most similar K-S value
5   for (i in 1:(ns-1)){         # loop through the rows
6     for (j in (i+1):ns){       # loop through the columns
7       KS <- ks.test(DZ[[i]],DZ[[j]])$statistic
8       if (KS < minKS){
9         minKS <- KS            # update the least similar K-S values
10        mostsimilar <- c(i,j)
11      }
12      if (KS > maxKS){
13        maxKS <- KS            # update the most similar K-S values
14        leastsimilar <- c(i,j)
15      }
16    }
17  }
```

Plotting the most similar and least similar pairs as Q-Q plots:

```
18  par(mfrow=c(1,2))                  # set up a two panel plot
19  snames <- names(DZ)                # get the list of sample names
20  ms1 <- snames[mostsimilar[1]]      # first sample name in similar pair
```

```
21  ms2 <- snames[mostsimilar[2]]    # second sample name in similar pair
22  ls1 <- snames[leastsimilar[1]]   # first sample name in dissimilar pair
23  ls2 <- snames[leastsimilar[2]]   # second sample name in dissimilar pair
24  qqplot(DZ[[ms1]],DZ[[ms2]],xlab=ms1,ylab=ms2,main=minKS)
25  qqplot(DZ[[ls1]],DZ[[ls2]],xlab=ls1,ylab=ls2,main=maxKS)
```

The most similar samples are T and Y, whose K-S distance is 0.07; the least similar samples are L and 8, whose K-S distance is 0.63.

19.10   Regression

1. Inspecting the correlation matrix

```
1  > cor(trees)
2            Girth    Height     Volume
3  Girth   1.0000000 0.5192801 0.9671194
4  Height 0.5192801 1.0000000 0.5982497
5  Volume 0.9671194 0.5982497 1.0000000
```

shows that, among all three possible pairs of variables, `Girth` and `Volume` are most strongly correlated. Fitting a straight line through the data, and showing on a scatter plot:

```
1  fit <- lm(Volume~Girth,data=trees)
2  plot(Volume~Girth,data=trees)
3  abline(fit)
```

Note how the `plot` function also accepts formula notation. This is equivalent to:

```
2  plot(x=trees$Girth,y=trees$Volume,xlab='Girth',ylab='Volume')
```

The slope and intercept are:

```
> fit$coef
(Intercept)      Girth
 -36.943459    5.065856
```

Hence Volume = 5.065856 - 36.943459 × Girth.

2. Predicting the world population for the year 2020:

```
1  data(worldpop,package='geostats')
2  recent <- worldpop[worldpop$year>1960,]
3  fit <- lm(population~year,data=recent)
4  pred <- predict(fit,newdata=data.frame(year=2020),interval='prediction')
```

which gives the following result:

```
> pred
       fit      lwr      upr
1 7703.923 7579.205 7828.642
```

3. Using the left hand side of Equation 10.21:

$$
\rho_{X,Y} \approx \frac{\left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2}{\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_y}{\mu_y}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2}\sqrt{\left[\frac{\sigma_x}{\mu_x}\right]^2 + \left[\frac{\sigma_z}{\mu_z}\right]^2}} = \frac{0.1^2}{\sqrt{0.01^2 + 0.1^2}\sqrt{0.05^2 + 0.1^2}} = 0.890
$$

4. Preparing the data:

```
xy <- data.frame(x=c(10,20,28),sx=rep(1,3),
                 y=c(20,30,42),sy=rep(1,3),
                 cov=c(0.9,0.9,-0.9))
```

Fitting the two models:

```
lmfit <- lm(y ~ x, data=xy)
yorkfit <- york(xy)
```

Querying the results:

```
> lmfit$coef
(Intercept)           x
   7.213115    1.213115
> yorkfit$coef
intercept      slope
 9.300252   1.052391
```

19.11 Fractals and chaos

1. The solution to this exercise is very similar to Section 17.11.1. Using the `sizefrequency` function in the `geostats` package:

```
> sf <- sizefrequency(rivers)
> plot(sf,log='xy')
```

Fitting a line through the data

```
> fit <- lm(log(frequency)~log(size),data=sf)
> lines(sf$size,exp(predict(fit)))
```

The straight line fit is not great, indicating that short rivers have been under-counted in this dataset.

2. Let us first have a look at the `fractures` dataset:

```
1  data(fractures,package='geostats')
2  image(fractures)
```

Counting the number of 4×4 and 8×8 boxes:

```
> boxcount(fractures,size=8)
[1] 1456
> boxcount(fractures,size=8)
[1] 662
```

Using `geostats`' `fractaldim` function:

```
> fit <- fractaldim(fractures)
> fit$coef[2]
log(size)
-1.541701
```

3. Extract the last 50 years worth of data from the `declustered` database:

```
1  data(declustered,package='geostats')
2  ny <- 50                          # number of years
3  lastyear <- max(declustered$year)  # 2016
4  firstyear <- lastyear-ny           # 1967
5  recent <- (declustered$year>firstyear) & (declustered$year<=lastyear)
6  dat <- declustered$mag[recent]     # magnitudes of recent earthquakes
```

We use the Gutenberg-Richter law to estimate the number of magnitude ≥ 6 earthquakes:

```
6  nq <- length(dat)          # the number of earthquakes
7  fit <- gutenberg(dat)      # size - (log)frequency distribution
8  lf6 <- predict(fit,newdata=data.frame(mag=6))
```

Giving a value for $\log_{10}[N/N_\circ]$ of

```
> lf6
-2.705345
```

Hence the expected number of magnitude ≥ 6 earthquakes per year is:

```
9  f6 <- (10^lf6)*nq/ny
```

which is 0.92. The actual number of earthquakes will vary around this number, following a Poisson distribution (Chapter 6) with $\lambda = 0.92$. The probability of observing at least one such event next year is given by

```
> ppois(q=0,lambda=f6,lower.tail=FALSE)
[1] 0.6014946
```

4. Plotting 9 experiments in a 3×3 grid:

```
1  p <- par(mfrow=c(3,3),mar=rep(0,4)) # initialise the plot
2  pendulum()                          # default settings
3  pendulum(startpos=c(-1.9,2))        # tiny change in starting position
4  pendulum(startpos=c(2,2))           # start in the upper right corner
5  pendulum(startvel=c(0.5,0))         # start with a horizontal push
6  pendulum(startvel=c(1,0))           # a stronger push
7  pendulum(startvel=c(0,-1))          # push down
8  pendulum(src=matrix(c(1,-1,0,0),ncol=2))          # two magnets
9  pendulum(src=matrix(c(1,-1,0,0,0,-1),ncol=2))     # three magnets
10 pendulum(src=matrix(c(1,1,-1,-1,1,-1,1,-1),ncol=2))  # four magnets
11 par(p)                              # restore the parameters
```

19.12 Unsupervised learning

1. Removing the `Species` column from the `iris` dataset and feeding the unclassified data into R's `prcomp` function:

```
1  pc <- prcomp(iris[,-5])
2  biplot(pc)
```

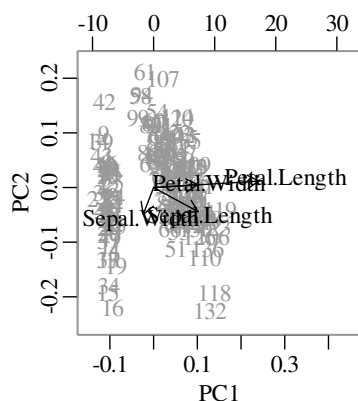Which produces the following biplot:

Figure 19.1: PCA biplot for the `iris` data. This diagram indicates there are two groups of flowers that with distinct petal width and length measurements (PC1). Within these two groups, additional variability is caused by the sepal width and length (PC2). The vector loadings of the petal width and length point in the same direction, which means that these two variables are correlated with each other. The vector loading of the sepal width is perpendicular to that of the petal measurements, which means that the sepal and petal dimensions vary independently.

2. Classical MDS analysis of the `iris` data:

```
1  d <- dist(iris[,-5])
2  mds <- cmdscale(d)
3  plot(mds,type='n')
4  text(mds)
```

which produces essentially the same output as Figure 19.1 but without the arrows.

3. Repeating the code from Section 17.12.5 for different numbers of clusters:

```
K <- 10              # maximum number of clusters to evaluate
ss <- rep(0,K)       # initialise the vector with the sums of squares
for (k in 1:K){      # loop through all the k values
  fit <- kmeans(iris[,-5],centers=k) # fit the k means
  ss[k] <- fit$tot.withinss          # extract the sum of squares
}
plot(x=1:K,y=ss,type='b')            # plot as both lines and points
```
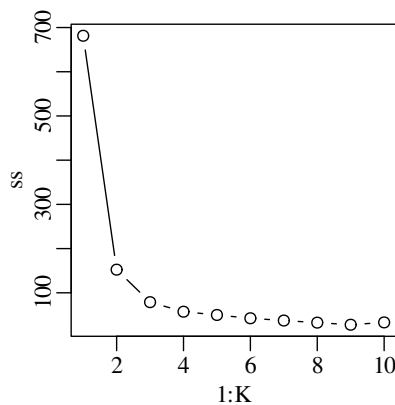

Figure 19.2: Evaluating the within-cluster sum-of-squares (ss) of the k-means algorithm for different numbers of clusters. The ss-misfit drops off very quicky before making an 'elbow' at $k = 3$ clusters. Hence we cannot justify more than 3 clusters.

4. Using the `ksdist` function as instructed:

```
data(DZ,package='geostats')
d <- ksdist(KS)
tree <- hclust(d)
plot(tree)
```
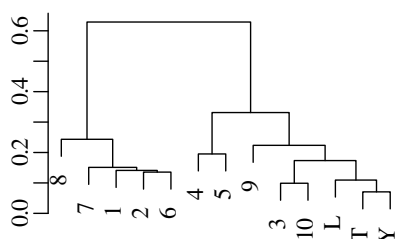
This produces the following tree:

Figure 19.3: Hierarchical clustering tree for the detrital zircon data. The tree conveys the same information as the MDS configuration of Figure 12.9: there are two main clusters; T and Y are the two most similar samples; whilst L and 8 are the two most dissimilar samples.

19.13   Supervised learning

1. Build an LDA model for the `training` data:

```
1  library(MASS)
2  data(training,package='geostats')
3  ld <- lda(affinity ~ ., data=training)
```

Predict the tectonic affinity of the `training` data:

```
4  pr <- predict(ld)
```

which is equivalent to:

```
4  pr <- predict(ld,newdata=training[,-1])
```

Count the number of misclassified `training` data:

```
> sum(pr$class != training$affinity)
[1] 60
```

So 60 of the 646 training samples were misclassified (9%).

2. Loading the `test` data into memory and classifying it with the `ld` model developed in answer 1:

```
1  data(test,package='geostats')
2  pr.test <- predict(ld,newdata=test[,-1])
```

Count the number of misclassified `test` data:

```
> sum(pr.test$class != test$affinity)
[1] 32
```

So 32 out of 147 of the `test` data were misclassified (21%). Unsurprisingly, this is higher than the misclassification rate of the `training` data. Inspecting the results in some more detail:

```
> table(pr.test$class,test$affinity)
       IAB MORB OIB
  IAB   48    2   1
  MORB  12   16   8
  OIB    4    5  51
```

This shows that the misclassification rates are similar for all three tectonic affinities.

3. Repeating the code of exercise 1 but replacing `MASS` with `rpart` and `lda` with `rpart`:

```
1  library(rpart)
2  data(training,package='geostats')
3  tree <- rpart(affinity ~ ., data=training)
```

Predict the tectonic affinity of the `training` data:

```
3   pr <- predict(tree,type='class')
```

Count the number of misclassified `training` samples:

```
> sum(pr != training$affinity)
[1] 42
```

So 42 of the 646 training samples were misclassified.

4. Repeating the code of exercise 2 but replacing `MASS` with `rpart` and `lda` with `rpart`.

```
1   data(test,package='geostats')
2   pr.test <- predict(tree,newdata=test[,-1],type='class')
```

Count the number of misclassified `test` data:

```
> sum(pr.test != test$affinity)
[1] 28
```

So 28 out of 147 of the `test` data were misclassified (19%). Again, this is higher than the misclassification rate of the `training` data, but slightly lower than the misclassification rate of the `test` data by LDA.

19.14   Compositional data

1. (a) Calculate the arithmetic mean fuel consumption, in miles per gallon:

```
> avg.mpg <- mean(mtcars[,'mpg'])
> avg.mpg
[1] 20.09062
```

   (b) Convert the data to litres/100km:

```
l100k <- 235/mtcars[,'mpg']
```

   (c) Average the litres/100km:

```
> avg.l100k <- mean(l100k)
> avg.l100k
[1] 12.7434
```

   (d) Convert the arithmetic mean number of miles per gallon (from step 1a) to units of litre/100km.

```
> avg.l100k.from.mpg <- 235/avg.mpg
> avg.l100k.from.mpg
[1] 11.697
```

which is *not* equal to the 12.7434 litres/100km obtained under step 1c. The difference is nearly 10%.

(e) Compute the geometric mean fuel consumption in mpg and litres/100km, and convert the geometric mean mpg value to litres/100km:

```
> geomean.mpg <- exp(mean(log(mtcars[,'mpg'])))
> geomean.l100k <- exp(mean(log(l100k)))
> geomean.l100k.from.mpg <- 235/geomean.mpg
> c(geomean.l100k,geomean.l100k.from.mpg)
[1] 12.20775 12.20775
```

which is an altogether more sensible result than that obtained under step 1d.

2. Load `geostats`' `test` data into memory and plot the CaO–K$_2$O–Na$_2$O subcomposition on a ternary diagram as filled grey circles:

```
1  data(test,package='geostats')
2  alkali <- test[,c('CaO','K2O','Na2O')]
3  ternary(alkali,pch=16,col='grey50')
```

Adding the arithmetic mean as a white filled circle:

```
4  arithmetic.mean <- colMeans(alkali)
5  ternary(arithmetic.mean,add=TRUE,type='p',pch=21,bg='white')
```

Adding the logratio mean as a white filled square:

```
6  logratio.mean <- exp(colMeans(log(alkali)))
7  ternary(logratio.mean,add=TRUE,type='p',pch=22,bg='white')
```

3. PCA is an unsupervised learning technique. So we don't need to know the tectonic affinities, which are stored in the first column of the `training` data. Hence we split the `data` into two parts: the affinities and the data itself. The data is used for the PCA, and the affinities are used as labels to help us interpret the biplot:

```
1  data(test,package='geostats')
2  aff <- test[,1]      # tectonic affinities
3  dat <- test[,-1]     # geochemical data
4  lrdat <- clr(dat)
5  pc <- prcomp(lrdat)
6  biplot(pc,col=c('grey50','black'),xlabs=aff)
```
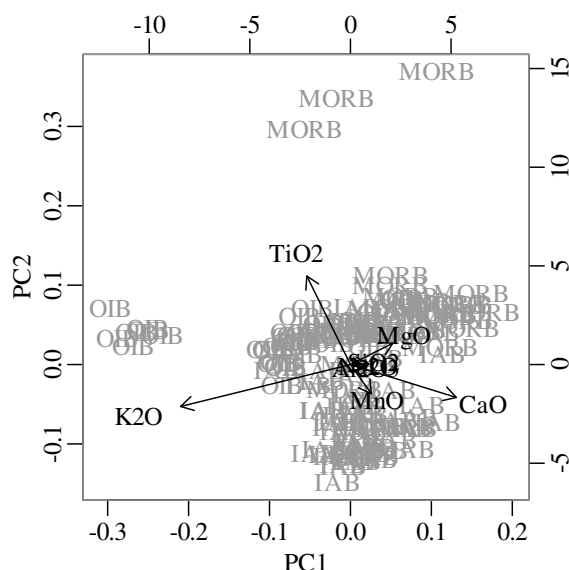
Figure 19.4: PCA biplot of the oceanic basalt compositions. The data roughly fall into three clusters, corresponding to OIB, MORB and IAB. OIBs are relatively rich in K_2O and poor in CaO; MORBs are rich in MgO and TiO_2; and IABs are rich in MnO and poor in TiO_2. K_2O and CaO are anti-correlated, and so are TiO_2 and MnO. The variability in MnO/CaO is independent of the variability in TiO_2/MnO. The 'outliers' on the ternary diagram of exercise 2 are OIBs that are particularly poor in CaO.

4. Compositional LDA of the training data:

```
data(training,package='geostats')
ld <- lda(x=alr(training[,-1]),grouping=training[,1])
pr.training <- predict(ld)
```

Compositional LDA of the test data:

```
data(test,package='geostats')
pr.test <- predict(ld,newdata=alr(test[,-1]))
```

Compare the fitted results with the true affinities:

```
> sum(pr.training$class != training$affinity)
[1] 48
> sum(pr.test$class != test$affinity)
[1] 19
```

In contrast with the previous LDA results of Section 19.13.1–2, the logratio transformation has reduced the number of misclassified samples from 60 to 48 for the training data, and from 32 to 19 for the test data.

19.15   Directional data

1. Store the data into two variables:

```
A <- c(50,55,40,60,45)
B <- c(350,10,5,358)
```

Then the difference of the vector means is given by

```
> meanangle(A,degrees=TRUE) - meanangle(B,degrees=TRUE)
[1] 49.24496
```

(for comparison, the difference of the arithmetic means is $-131°$)

2. Load the earthquake data and extract the latitude and longitude values:

```
1  data(earthquakes,package='geostats')
2  lon <- earthquakes$lon
3  lat <- earthquakes$lat
```

Select the plottable longitudes and show on a Schmidt net:

```
4  good <- (lon>-90 & lon<90)
5  stereonet(trd=lon[good],plg=lat[good],option=3,degrees=TRUE,wulff=FALSE)
```

3. Store the data into two data frames:

```
1  F1 <- data.frame(strike=c(200,195,210,205),dip=c(70,68,71,67))
2  F2 <- data.frame(strike=c(20,25,18,17,16),dip=c(10,12,9,14,11))
```

Plot the two sets of fault measurements on a single Wulff diagram (in different colours to allow distinction):

```
3  stereonet(trd=F1$strike,plg=F1$dip,option=2,degrees=TRUE)
4  stereonet(trd=F2$strike,plg=F2$dip,option=2,degrees=TRUE,
5            add=TRUE,col='grey')
```

Calculate the mean strike and dip:

```
5  mF1 <- meanangle(trd=F1$strike,plg=F1$dip,option=2,degrees=TRUE)
6  mF2 <- meanangle(trd=F2$strike,plg=F2$dip,option=2,degrees=TRUE)
```

Add these values to the existing stereoplot:

```
5  stereonet(trd=mF1[1],plg=mF1[2],option=2,degrees=TRUE,add=TRUE,pch=15)
6  stereonet(trd=mF2[1],plg=mF2[2],option=2,degrees=TRUE,add=TRUE,pch=15,
7            col='grey')
```

Querying the mean vectors at the console:

```
> mF1
[1] -157.67178   69.08943
> mF2
[1] 19.19848 11.21677
```

The difference between the strikes and dips is -176.9° and 57.9°, respectively.

4. The same `Rbar` function that was used for the circular data in Section 18.15.2 can also be used to calculating the concentration parameter ($\bar{R}$) of spherical data. For the `palaeomag` data:

```
> Rbar(trd=palaeomag$decl,plg=palaeomag$incl,option=1,degrees=TRUE)
[1] 0.9927666
```

and for the `fault` data:

```
> Rbar(trd=fault$strike,plg=fault$dip,option=2,degrees=TRUE)
[1] 0.9970092
```

Because the latter value is higher than the former, we conclude that the fault orientation data are more strongly concentrated than the palaeomagnetic data.

19.16   Spatial data

1. Load the `hills` dataset and storing the three columns in separate variables for brevity:

```
1  data(hills,package='geostats')
2  X <- hills$X
3  Y <- hills$Y
4  Z <- hills$Z
```

Fit the four semivariogram models:

```
5  par(mfrow=c(2,2))
6  normodel <- semivariogram(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,plot=TRUE,model='gaussian')
7  expmodel <- semivariogram(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,plot=TRUE,model='exponential')
8  linmodel <- semivariogram(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,plot=TRUE,model='linear')
9  sphmodel <- semivariogram(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,plot=TRUE,model='spherical')
```

Visual inspection of the resulting plots indicates that the Gaussian model fits the empirical semivariogram best, which is not surprising given that the `hills` dataset consists of a bivariate Gaussian mixture.
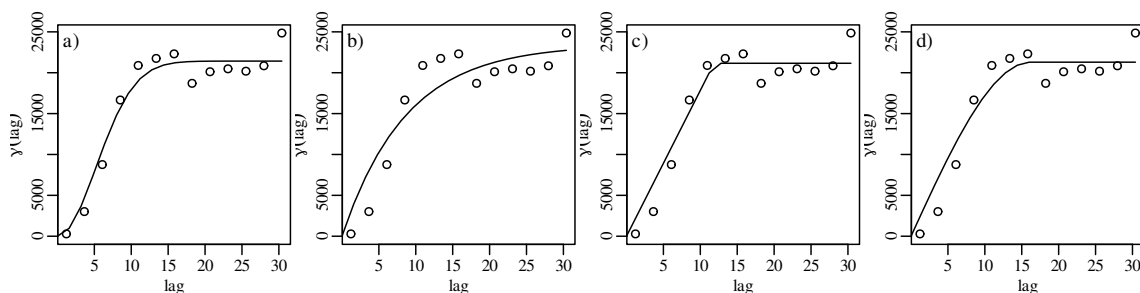

Figure 19.5: a) Gaussian; b) exponential; c) linear and d) spherical semivariogram fits to the `hills` data.

2. Kriging interpolation of $\{x = 0, y = 0\}$ using the `normodel` semivariogram model from step 1:

```
> kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,xi=0,yi=0,svm=normodel)
[1] 538.1133
```

and the standard error:

```
> v <- kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,xi=0,yi=0,svm=normodel,err=TRUE)
> sqrt(v)
[1] 6.180623
```

Hence the elevation estimate at $\{x = 0, y = 0\}$ is 538 ± 6 m.

3. Following the numerical recipe of Section 17.16.4:

```
11   xi <- seq(from=min(X),to=max(X),length.out=30)
12   yi <- seq(from=min(Y),to=max(Y),length.out=30)
13   zi <- kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,xi=xi,yi=yi,svm=normodel,grid=TRUE)
14   colourplot(x=xi,y=yi,z=zi,colspec=grey)
```

4. Fitting spherical and exponential semivariogram models to the Meuse data:

```
1   data(meuse,package='geostats')
2   X <- meuse$x
3   Y <- meuse$y
4   Z <- log(meuse$zinc)
5   sphmodel <- semivariogram(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,plot=FALSE,model='spherical')
6   expmodel <- semivariogram(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,plot=FALSE,model='exponential')
```

Estimating the log[Zn] values along an $x - y$ grids for both models:

```
7    xi <- seq(from=min(X),to=max(X),length.out=50)
8    yi <- seq(from=min(Y),to=max(Y),length.out=50)
9    zsph <- kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,xi=xi,yi=yi,grid=TRUE,svm=sphmodel)
10   zexp <- kriging(x=X,y=Y,z=Z,xi=xi,yi=yi,grid=TRUE,svm=expmodel)
11   colourplot(x=xi,y=yi,z=zsph-zexp,colspec=grey)
```

The largest disagreements are found in sparsely sampled parts of the map. To show the sample locations as white circles, use the `colourplots`'s optional `extra` argument:

```
11   colourplot(x=xi,y=yi,z=exp(zsph-zexp),colspec=grey,
12              extra={points(X,Y,pch=16,col='white')})
```

which also exponentiates the log-contrasts to yield the ratio of the Zn-concentation estimate using the spherical and exponential semivariogram models.
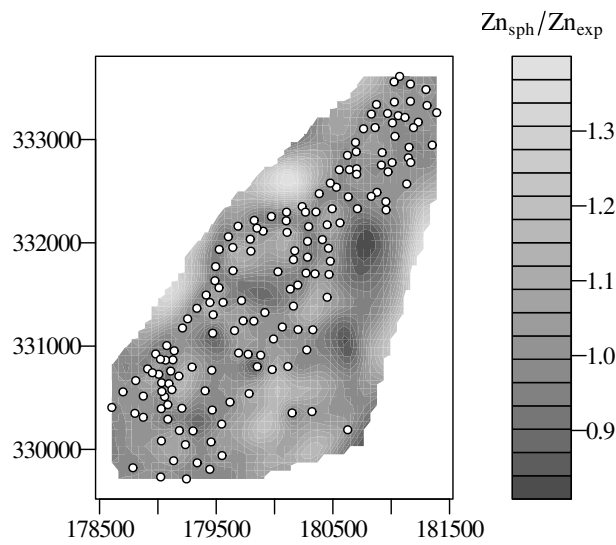
Figure 19.6: Log-contrast between two kriging interpolations for the Meuse data, using the spherical and exponential semivariogram models. The 155 measurements locations are marked by white circles. The smallest discrepancies ($< 10\%$) are found in densely sampled areas. In more sparsely sampled parts of the contour plot, and especially near the edges, the disagreement between the spherical and exponential models increases to up to 60%.